

# Application for resource consent or fast-track resource consent

(Or Associated Consent Pursuant to the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA)) (If applying for a Resource Consent pursuant to Section 87AAC or 88 of the RMA, this form can be used to satisfy the requirements of Schedule 4). Prior to, and during, completion of this application form, please refer to Resource Consent Guidance Notes and Schedule of Fees and Charges — [both available on the Council's web page](#).

## 1. Pre-Lodgement Meeting

Have you met with a council Resource Consent representative to discuss this application prior to lodgement?  Yes  No

## 2. Type of Consent being applied for

*(more than one circle can be ticked):*

- Land Use
- Fast Track Land Use\*
- Subdivision
- Consent under National Environmental Standard  
(e.g. Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil)
- Other (please specify) \_\_\_\_\_
- Discharge
- Change of Consent Notice (s.221(3))
- Extension of time (s.125)

\* *The fast track is for simple land use consents and is restricted to consents with a controlled activity status.*

## 3. Would you like to opt out of the Fast Track Process?

Yes  No

## 4. Consultation

Have you consulted with Iwi/Hapū?  Yes  No

If yes, which groups have you consulted with?

Who else have you consulted with?

For any questions or information regarding iwi/hapū consultation, please contact Te Hono at Far North District Council [tehonosupport@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:tehonosupport@fndc.govt.nz)

## 5. Applicant Details

**Name/s:**

Northland Regional Council

**Email:**

**Phone number:**

**Postal address:**

(or alternative method of service under section 352 of the act)

## 6. Address for Correspondence

*Name and address for service and correspondence (if using an Agent write their details here)*

**Name/s:**

Laura Bowman

**Email:**

**Phone number:**

**Postal address:**

(or alternative method of service under section 352 of the act)

1040

*\* All correspondence will be sent by email in the first instance. Please advise us if you would prefer an alternative means of communication.*

## 7. Details of Property Owner/s and Occupier/s

*Name and Address of the Owner/Occupiers of the land to which this application relates (where there are multiple owners or occupiers please list on a separate sheet if required)*

**Name/s:**

Far North District Council

**Property Address/  
Location:**

Private Bag 752, Kaikohe, 0440

**Postcode**

0140

## 8. Application Site Details

*Location and/or property street address of the proposed activity:*

**Name/s:**

**Site Address/  
Location:**

**Postcode**

**Legal Description:**

**Val Number:**

**Certificate of title:**

Please remember to attach a copy of your Certificate of Title to the application, along with relevant consent notices and/or easements and encumbrances (search copy must be less than 6 months old)

### Site visit requirements:

Is there a locked gate or security system restricting access by Council staff?  Yes  No

Is there a dog on the property?  Yes  No

Please provide details of any other entry restrictions that Council staff should be aware of, e.g. health and safety, caretaker's details. This is important to avoid a wasted trip and having to re-arrange a second visit.

## 9. Description of the Proposal:

Please enter a brief description of the proposal here. Please refer to Chapter 4 of the District Plan, and Guidance Notes, for further details of information requirements.

If this is an application for a Change or Cancellation of Consent Notice conditions (s.221(3)), please quote relevant existing Resource Consents and Consent Notice identifiers and provide details of the change(s), with reasons for requesting them.

## 10. Would you like to request Public Notification?

Yes  No

## 11. Other Consent required/being applied for under different legislation

(more than one circle can be ticked):

- Building Consent
- Regional Council Consent (ref # if known)
- National Environmental Standard consent
- Other (please specify)

## 12. National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health:

The site and proposal may be subject to the above NES. In order to determine whether regard needs to be had to the NES please answer the following:

Is the piece of land currently being used or has it historically ever been used for an activity or industry on the Hazardous Industries and Activities List (HAIL)  Yes  No  Don't know

Is the proposed activity an activity covered by the NES? Please tick if any of the following apply to your proposal, as the NESCS may apply as a result.  Yes  No  Don't know

- Subdividing land
- Changing the use of a piece of land
- Disturbing, removing or sampling soil
- Removing or replacing a fuel storage system

## 13. Assessment of Environmental Effects:

*Every application for resource consent must be accompanied by an Assessment of Environmental Effects (AEE). This is a requirement of Schedule 4 of the Resource Management Act 1991 and an application can be rejected if an adequate AEE is not provided. The information in an AEE must be specified in sufficient detail to satisfy the purpose for which it is required. Your AEE may include additional information such as Written Approvals from adjoining property owners, or affected parties.*

Your AEE is attached to this application  Yes

## 13. Draft Conditions:

Do you wish to see the draft conditions prior to the release of the resource consent decision?  Yes  No

If yes, do you agree to extend the processing timeframe pursuant to Section 37 of the Resource Management Act by 5 working days?  Yes  No

## 14. Billing Details:

This identifies the person or entity that will be responsible for paying any invoices or receiving any refunds associated with processing this resource consent. Please also refer to Council's Fees and Charges Schedule.

**Name/s:** (please write in full)

Northland Regional Council (co Brendon Gray)

**Email:**

**Phone number:**

**Postal address:**

(or alternative method of service under section 352 of the act)

### Fees Information

An instalment fee for processing this application is payable at the time of lodgement and must accompany your application in order for it to be lodged. Please note that if the instalment fee is insufficient to cover the actual and reasonable costs of work undertaken to process the application you will be required to pay any additional costs. Invoiced amounts are payable by the 20th of the month following invoice date. You may also be required to make additional payments if your application requires notification.

### Declaration concerning Payment of Fees

I/we understand that the Council may charge me/us for all costs actually and reasonably incurred in processing this application. Subject to my/our rights under Sections 357B and 358 of the RMA, to object to any costs, I/we undertake to pay all and future processing costs incurred by the Council. Without limiting the Far North District Council's legal rights if any steps (including the use of debt collection agencies) are necessary to recover unpaid processing costs I/we agree to pay all costs of recovering those processing costs. If this application is made on behalf of a trust (private or family), a society (incorporated or unincorporated) or a company in signing this application I/we are binding the trust, society or company to pay all the above costs and guaranteeing to pay all the above costs in my/our personal capacity.

**Name:** (please write in full)

Brendon Gray

**Signature:**

(signature of bill payer)

Date 27-Aug-2024

**MANDATORY**

## 15. Important Information:

### Note to applicant

You must include all information required by this form. The information must be specified in sufficient detail to satisfy the purpose for which it is required.

You may apply for 2 or more resource consents that are needed for the same activity on the same form. You must pay the charge payable to the consent authority for the resource consent application under the Resource Management Act 1991.

### Fast-track application

Under the fast-track resource consent process, notice of the decision must be given within 10 working days after the date the application was first lodged with the authority, unless the applicant opts out of that process at the time of lodgement. A fast-track application may cease to be a fast-track application under section 87AAC(2) of the RMA.

### Privacy Information:

Once this application is lodged with the Council it becomes public information. Please advise Council if there is sensitive information in the proposal. The information you have provided on this form is required so that your application for consent pursuant to the Resource Management Act 1991 can be processed under that Act. The information will be stored on a public register and held by the Far North District Council. The details of your application may also be made available to the public on the Council's website, [www.fndc.govt.nz](http://www.fndc.govt.nz). These details are collected to inform the general public and community groups about all consents which have been issued through the Far North District Council.

## 15. Important information continued...

### Declaration

The information I have supplied with this application is true and complete to the best of my knowledge.

**Name:** (please write in full)

**Signature:**

Date

*A signature is not required if the application is made by electronic means*

### Checklist (please tick if information is provided)

---

- Payment (cheques payable to Far North District Council)
- A current Certificate of Title (Search Copy not more than 6 months old)
- Details of your consultation with Iwi and hapū
- Copies of any listed encumbrances, easements and/or consent notices relevant to the application
- Applicant / Agent / Property Owner / Bill Payer details provided
- Location of property and description of proposal
- Assessment of Environmental Effects
- Written Approvals / correspondence from consulted parties
- Reports from technical experts (if required)
- Copies of other relevant consents associated with this application
- Location and Site plans (land use) AND/OR
- Location and Scheme Plan (subdivision)
- Elevations / Floor plans
- Topographical / contour plans

Please refer to Chapter 4 of the District Plan for details of the information that must be provided with an application. Please also refer to the RC Checklist available on the Council's website. This contains more helpful hints as to what information needs to be shown on plans.



# Northland Tsunami Siren Rollout

Stage 3 – Land Use Consent (Siren 80)

Ramp Road, Lake Ohia

Assessment of Environmental Effects and Statutory Analysis

10 September 2024

**B&A**

Urban & Environmental

Prepared for:  
Northland Regional Council

B&A Reference:

25380

Status:

Final Revision

Date:

10 September 2024

Prepared by:



**Laura Bowman**

Planner, Barker & Associates Limited

Reviewed by:



**Melissa McGrath**

Senior Associate, Barker & Associates Limited



# Contents

---

<b>1.0</b>	<b>Applicant and Property Details</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>2.0</b>	<b>Background</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	Pre-Lodgement Consultation	7
2.2	Consenting History	7
<b>3.0</b>	<b>Site Context</b>	<b>8</b>
3.1	Site Description and Surrounding Context	8
<b>4.0</b>	<b>Proposal</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>5.0</b>	<b>Reasons for Consent</b>	<b>11</b>
5.1	Operative Far North District Plan	11
5.2	Proposed Far North District Plan	12
5.3	National Environmental Standard – Contaminated Soils	12
5.4	Activity Status	12
<b>6.0</b>	<b>Public Notification Assessment (Sections 95A, 95C and 95D)</b>	<b>13</b>
6.1	Assessment of Steps 1 to 4 (Sections 95A)	13
6.2	Section 95D Statutory Matters	14
6.3	Land Excluded from the Assessment	14
6.4	Assessment of Effects on the Wider Environment	15
6.5	Summary of Effects	20
6.6	Public Notification Conclusion	20
<b>7.0</b>	<b>Limited Notification Assessment (Sections 95B, 95E to 95G)</b>	<b>20</b>
7.1	Assessment of Steps 1 to 4 (Sections 95B)	20
7.2	Section 95E Statutory Matters	21
7.3	Assessment of Effects on Adjacent Properties	21
7.4	Limited Notification Conclusion	23
<b>8.0</b>	<b>Consideration of Applications (Section 104)</b>	<b>23</b>
8.1	Statutory Matters	23
8.2	Weighting of Proposed Plan Changes: Proposed Far North District Plan	23
<b>9.0</b>	<b>Effects on the Environment (Section 104(1)(A))</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>10.0</b>	<b>District Plan and Statutory Documents (Section 104(1)(B))</b>	<b>24</b>
10.1	Objectives and Policies of the Far North District Plan	24
10.2	Objectives and Policies of the Proposed Far North Plan	25
10.3	Objectives and Policies of the Northland Regional Policy Statement	26
10.4	Objectives and Policies of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement	26
10.5	Summary	27
<b>11.0</b>	<b>Part 2 Matters</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>12.0</b>	<b>Other Matters (Section 104(1)(C))</b>	<b>28</b>
12.1	Record of Title Interests	28
<b>13.0</b>	<b>Section 104D Non-complying Activities</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>14.0</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>	<b>28</b>

## Appendices

---

- Appendix 1: Gazette Notice - Parcel ID 6851424
- Appendix 2: Correspondence and Written Approval
- Appendix 3: 2240061-RMALUC - Decision
- Appendix 4: 2240307-RMALUC - Decision
- Appendix 5: 2240382-RMALUC - Decision
- Appendix 6: Landscape Assessment
- Appendix 7: Siren 80 Site Plan
- Appendix 8: Siren 80 - Aerial Plan
- Appendix 9: Tsunami Siren Specifications
- Appendix 10: Elevation Plan
- Appendix 11: Noise Advice
- Appendix 12: Rules Assessment
- Appendix 13: CDEM Tsunami Brochure 2023

## 1.0 Applicant and Property Details

---

To:	Far North District Council (FNDC)
Site Address:	Part Section 26 Blk V Rangaunu SD, Far North District
Applicant Name:	Northland Regional Council
Address for Service:	Barker & Associates Ltd PO Box 37, Whangārei 0140 Level 1, 136 Bank Street Whangārei 0112 Attention: Melissa McGrath
Legal Description:	Part Section 26 Blk V Rangaunu SD, Far North District (Parcel ID: 6851424) (refer to Record of Title as <b>Appendix 1</b> )
Site Area:	5.0267ha
Site Owner:	Far North District Council
District Plan:	Operative Far North District Plan ( <b>ODP</b> ) Proposed Far North District Plan ( <b>PDP</b> )
Zoning:	<b>ODP:</b> Conservation <b>PDP:</b> Natural Open Space
Precinct:	<b>ODP:</b> None <b>PDP:</b> None
Overlays & Controls:	<b>ODP:</b> Outstanding Landscape, Coastal Hazard 2 <b>PDP:</b> Coastal Environment
Designations:	<b>ODP:</b> None <b>PDP:</b> None
Additional Limitations:	NRC Hazards: - Erosion Prone Land; - River Flood Hazard Zone; and - Coastal Flood Hazard Zone 0-3
Locality Diagram:	Refer to <b>Figure 1</b>
Brief Description of Proposal:	To construct and install a tsunami siren, including site preparation works and connection to power and telecommunication services in the Conservation Zone. The project seeks to build resilience and

support Te Taitokerau Northland's civil defence and emergency management response against tsunami risk.

Summary of Reasons for Consent:

**ODP:** Restricted Discretionary consent is required pursuant to Rule(s) 9.7.5.1.3 Building Height and 9.7.5.2.4 Noise. However, Non-Complying consent is required pursuant to Rules 9.7.5.3 Discretionary Activities and 12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities. A summary of reasons for consent is outlined in **Section 5** below.

## 2.0 Background

---

Northland Regional Council (**NRC**) is coordinating the rollout of new tsunami sirens across Te Taitokerau Northland. Barker & Associates (**B&A**) have been engaged to prepare and submit the resource consent application on behalf of NRC.

NRC is coordinating the siren roll out on behalf of all three-district councils within Te Taitokerau Northland. This project has been discussed in depth at Te Taitokerau's Civil Defence and Emergency Management Working Group (**CDEM**) and is fully supported by all iwi representatives, Council's CEO's and Mayors.

Currently, there are 205 sirens located throughout Te Taitokerau that do not meet the National Emergency Management Agency (**NEMA**) standards, the sirens do not meet frequency or messaging requirements of the standard and as such need replacing. 95 new sirens are proposed to replace the old sirens across Te Taitokerau which all have better coverage and will meet NEMA standards.

This proposal seeks to establish one new tsunami siren (siren 80) in the road reserve of Ramp Road, Lake Ohia in the Far North District. The siren infrastructure is part of CDEM's toolbox for managing the risk of tsunami across Te Taitokerau Northland. Details of pre-lodgement consultation and relevant consenting history are provided below.

The proposed siren infrastructure will be owned by FNDC, and managed by the Northland Regional Council (**NRC**).

This Assessment of Environmental Effects (**AEE**) has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of Section 88 of and Schedule 4 to the Resource Management Act 1991 (**RMA**) and is intended to provide the information necessary for a full understanding of the activity for which consent is sought and any actual or potential effects the proposal may have on the environment.

### 2.1 Pre-Lodgement Consultation

---

NRC Representatives communicated with Nina Raharuhi of Te Whānau Moana/Te Rorohuri hapū. Records of consultation have been included within **Appendix 2a**.

A record of consultation and approval with Far North District Council, as the land owner, have been included within **Appendix 2b**.

### 2.2 Consenting History

---

2240061-RMALUC (**Stage 1**) was lodged on 03/08/2023, and sought consent to install 27 sirens proposed throughout the Far North District. Through the section 92 process, sirens 62, 63, 71, 76, 100 and 101 were removed from Stage 1. Sirens 63, 100 and 101 were sought as part of stage 2. Sirens 62, 71 and 76 were sought as a separate application. Stage 1 was approved on 18/12/2023 and resulted in the approval of a total of 21 sirens consented. Stage 1 is provided as **Appendix 3**.

Siren 80 was originally approved under 2240061-RMALUC. However, the proposed location has been changed so a new resource consent application is being sought.

2240307-RMALUC (**Stage 2 – Package 1**) was lodged on 19/01/2024, and sought consent to install eight sirens throughout the Far North District. Siren 103 was removed from Stage 2 and is being

sought as a separate application within stage 3. Stage 2- Package 1 was approved on 19/04/2024 and resulted in the approval of a total of seven sirens consented. Stage 2- Package 1 is provided as **Appendix 4**.

2240382-RMALUC (**Stage 2 – Package 2**) was lodged on 19/03/2024, and sought consent to install nine sirens throughout the Far North District. Stage 2-Package 2 was approved on 10/05/2024 and resulted in the approval of a total of nine sirens consented. Stage 2- Package 2 is provided as **Appendix 5**.

## 3.0 Site Context

---

### 3.1 Site Description and Surrounding Context

---

Siren 80 is proposed to be located on a public reserve off Ramp Road, adjacent to Tokerau Beach as shown in **Figure 1** below.

The site measures 5.026ha and is used for parking and recreating, with access to the beach. It accommodates a toilet block (adjacent to the proposed Siren site). The site is accessed from the eastern end of Ramp Road. The Landscape Assessment by Simon Crocker (**Appendix 8**) identifies that there are scattered picnic tables and in the southern end of the reserve area and there is an area identified for freedom campervan parking which is accessed via a track which diverges from Ramp Road approximately 250m from its eastern end.

The site is zoned as a Conservation Zone under the ODP. It is bounded by a small number of residential properties to the north and north east, which are zoned as Coastal Residential, Tokerau Beach to the east and Conservation Zone to the south and west.

The proposed Siren is proposed in the northern portion of the site, adjacent to (on the south eastern side of), the public toilet block and the line of trees that bisects the reserve.

The wider locality is primarily made up of Conservation Zone along the coastline and to the south with the remaining land primarily zoned as Rural Production.



**Figure 1: Site Locality**

The site and location have been selected based on the following criteria:

- concentration of resident population;
- topography and sound propagation;
- availability of public land;
- access to a power supply and telecommunications; and
- serviceability.

In order for the siren to be effective, it is within coastal settlement or built-up area with resident populations. In addition to this and in order for the siren to function, it is required to be located near an electricity supply, be within cell tower coverage, and be easily accessed for ongoing maintenance.

## 4.0 Proposal

---

A summary of the key elements of the proposal is set out below. More detailed descriptions on particular aspects of the proposal are set out in the specialist reports and plans accompanying the application.

NRC are coordinating Te Taitokerau Northlands region wide roll out of new tsunami sirens to improve the regions emergency management response to the tsunami risk. This application includes the installation of one new siren within a public reserve adjacent to a public beach. A site plan is included at **Appendix 6** and **Appendix 7** demonstrating the location of the siren within the site.

It is proposed to utilise HSS Engineering Warning System Solutions; see **Appendix 9** for specification details. The siren type will be TWS-295 and be mounted on an 8m height mast. See **Figure 3** below to see example of the tsunami siren. Details of the sirens are as follows:

- **Siren:**
  - Siren 80 is proposed as a TWS-295 siren and will have a maximum height of 9.8m. Refer Elevation Plans at **Appendix 10**.
  - **Foundation:** The siren mast/pole will be set within a precast concrete foundation that is 2.5m x 2.5m in area.
  - The siren is proposed to be painted in Resene's 'Resene Abbey cc' coded as B45-009-231, this colour has a Light Reflectance Value of approximately 15. Refer to **Figure 2** below.

### Colour swatches online



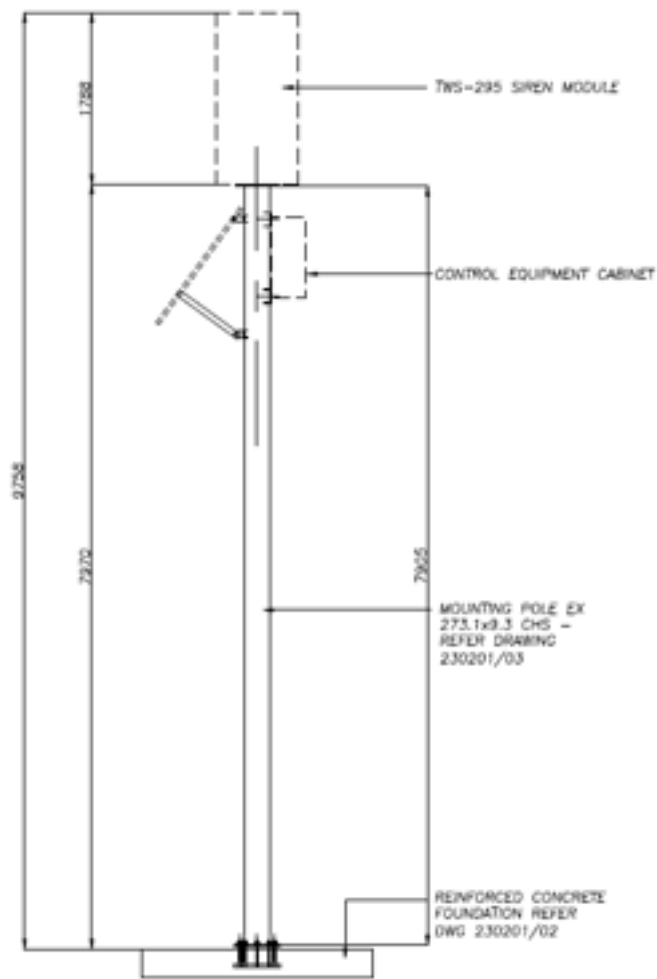
- Download instructions -

Colour name:	<b>Resene Abbey cc</b>
Total colour code:	B45-009-231
Chart colour code:	3GR40
Tone:	Light
Colour palette:	Blue
RGB:	73 81 84
Hex values:	#495154
LAB:	33.86 -2.48 -2.85
CMYK:	13 4 0 67
Approx. LRV:	15
Colour pencil recipe:	155 254 - -

**Figure 2: Proposed structure colour**

- **Bi-annual Tsunami Siren Testing:** The sirens will be tested twice annually at the turn of day light savings. As per 2240061-RMALUC, the following conditions are offered to manage the effects of the bi-annual warning system testing:
  - *The tsunami siren may be tested twice a year at the turn of daylight savings. Each test shall be undertaken for a maximum duration of two minutes during the daytime. Testing of the sirens shall not occur at night.*
- **Earthworks:** Approximately 3.5m<sup>3</sup> of earthworks are proposed over an area of 6.5m<sup>2</sup> is proposed for each siren to establish a foundation pad which is 2.5m x 2.5m. No vegetation removal is required.
- **Construction staging:** The estimated construction timeframe is 10 days, including to form the platform, install the concrete block foundation, install the mast, mount the siren, and connect the power supply.





GENERAL ARRANGEMENT – TWS-295 SIREN  
1:50

**Figure 3: Elevation Plan of Proposed Siren 80**

Detail of each element described above is provided in the relevant reports or plans.

## 5.0 Reasons for Consent

A rules assessment against the provisions of the ODP is attached as **Appendix 12**. The site is located within the Conservation under the ODP with an Outstanding Landscape Overlay. Under the PDP the site is located within the Natural Open Space Zone with Coastal Environment and Treaty Settlement overlay. The proposal requires consent for the matters outlined below.

### 5.1 Operative Far North District Plan

### Recreational Activities Zone

- **9.7.5.1.1 Purpose of Buildings** – The proposed siren is not a building that is directly for, or ancillary to, the principal conservation activities of the site, being a **non-complying activity** in accordance with rule 9.7.5.3.
- **Rule 9.7.5.1.3 Building Height** – The proposed siren is 9.8m in height exceeding the permitted limit of 8m, being a **restricted discretionary activity** in accordance with rule 9.7.5.2.2.
- **Rule 9.7.5.1.8 Noise** - The proposed siren will infringe the permitted noise standard when the siren is operating, being a **restricted discretionary activity** in accordance with rule 9.7.5.2.4.

### Natural and physical resources

- **12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities** – the proposed siren infringes the discretionary standard as it does not comply with the permitted, controlled, restricted discretionary, or discretionary activities in the Conservation Zone, being a **non-complying activity**.

## 5.2 Proposed Far North District Plan

---

### Proposed Far North District Plan

No rules with immediate legal effect trigger reasons for consent in accordance with section 96F of the RMA.

## 5.3 National Environmental Standard – Contaminated Soils

---

The NES Contaminated Soils were gazetted on 13th October 2011 and took effect on 1st January 2012.

The standards are applicable if the land in question is, or has been, or is more likely than not to have been used for a hazardous activity or industry and the applicant proposes to subdivide or change the use of the land, or disturb the soil, or remove or replace a fuel storage system.

Proposed Siren 80 is not mapped on Northland Regional Councils Selected Land Use register and there is no information that suggests that the sites have been used for any activities that are on the Hazardous Activities and Industry List (HAIL) or evidence of migration of hazardous substances from adjacent land use.

Based on the above, the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (NES-CS) does not apply to the proposal.

## 5.4 Activity Status

---

Overall, this application is for a **non-complying activity**.

## 6.0 Public Notification Assessment (Sections 95A, 95C and 95D)

---

### 6.1 Assessment of Steps 1 to 4 (Sections 95A)

---

Section 95A specifies the steps the council is to follow to determine whether an application is to be publicly notified. These are addressed in statutory order below.

#### 6.1.1 Step 1: Mandatory public notification is required in certain circumstances

Step 1 requires public notification where this is requested by the applicant; or the application is made jointly with an application to exchange of recreation reserved land under section 15AA of the Reserves Act 1977.

The above does not apply to the proposal.

#### 6.1.2 Step 2: If not required by step 1, public notification precluded in certain circumstances.

Step 2 describes that public notification is precluded where all applicable rules and national environmental standards preclude public notification; or where the application is for a controlled activity; or a restricted discretionary, discretionary or non-complying boundary activity.

In this case, the applicable rules do not preclude public notification, and the proposal is not a controlled activity or boundary activity. Therefore, public notification is not precluded.

#### 6.1.3 Step 3: If not required by step 2, public notification required in certain circumstances.

Step 3 describes that where public notification is not precluded by step 2, it is required if the applicable rules or national environmental standards require public notification, or if the activity is likely to have adverse effects on the environment that are more than minor.

As noted under step 2 above, public notification is not precluded, and an assessment in accordance with section 95A is required, which is set out in the sections below. As described below, it is considered that any adverse effects will be less than minor.

#### 6.1.4 Step 4: Public notification in special circumstances

If an application is not required to be publicly notified as a result of any of the previous steps, then the council is required to determine whether special circumstances exist that warrant it being publicly notified.

Special circumstances are those that are:

- Exceptional or unusual, but something less than extraordinary; or
- Outside of the common run of applications of this nature; or
- Circumstances which make notification desirable, notwithstanding the conclusion that the adverse effects will be no more than minor.

The application is to install one new tsunami siren at Tokerau Beach, within the Far North District. Resource consent is required for a non-complying activity as the ODP does not provide for or anticipate this activity. The proposal infringes bulk and location controls for maximum height generating effects that are akin to a street light or 30kV power pole.

It is considered that there is nothing noteworthy about the proposal. It is therefore considered that the application cannot be described as being out of the ordinary or giving rise to special circumstances.

## 6.2 Section 95D Statutory Matters

---

In determining whether to publicly notify an application, section 95D specifies a council must decide whether an activity will have, or is likely to have, adverse effects on the environment that are more than minor.

In determining whether adverse effects are more than minor:

- Adverse effects on persons who own or occupy the land within which the activity will occur, or any land adjacent to that land, must be disregarded.

The land to be excluded from the assessment is listed in section 6.3 below.

- Adverse effects permitted by a rule in a plan or national environmental standard (the 'permitted baseline') may be disregarded.

In this case under the ODP, there is no relevant permitted baseline as all sirens infringe the noise thresholds.

- Trade competition must be disregarded.

This is not considered to be a relevant matter in this case.

- The adverse effects on those persons who have provided their written approval must be disregarded.

No persons have provided their written approval for this proposal.

The sections below set out an assessment in accordance with section 95D, including identification of adjacent properties, and an assessment of adverse effects.

## 6.3 Land Excluded from the Assessment

---

In terms of the tests for public notification (but not for the purposes of limited notification or service of notice), the adjacent properties to be excluded from the assessment are shown in **Figure 3** below, and include:

- 152 Ramp Road;
- 149 Ramp Road;
- 155 Ramp Road;

- 157 Ramp Road;
- 161 Ramp Road;
- 163 Ramp Road; and
- Coastal Marine Area.



**Figure 3: Adjacent properties in relation to subject site. Source: Emaps.**

#### 6.4 Assessment of Effects on the Wider Environment

---

The following sections set out an assessment of wider effects of the proposal, and it is considered that effects in relation to the following matters are relevant:

- Natural Hazards;
- Noise;
- Construction Activities;
- Archaeological and Heritage Effects;
- Cultural Effects;
- Built Character and Amenity;
- Coastal Environment, Landscape and Visual Amenity; and

- Servicing;

These matters are set out and discussed below.

#### 6.4.1 Natural Hazards

Siren 80 is mapped by NRC as being subject to Erosion Prone Land, River Flood Hazard Zone and Coastal Flood Hazard Zone 0-3. Notably, this siren and the settlement that it is proposed within are mapped by NRC as being subject to tsunami hazard areas.

These areas correspond with low lying areas near the coast and shorelines. The proposed tsunami siren is a relatively modest structure in terms of footprint and mass, is non-habitable and only involves minimal earthworks to establish the building platform (approximately 3.5m<sup>3</sup> over 6.5m<sup>2</sup>). Following the preparation, a flat building platform, a pre-cast concrete foundation will be installed with the siren mast which the siren will be mounted to. While the infrastructure may at times be susceptible to coastal inundation in the future, the infrastructure itself is considered to be structurally resilient to the natural hazard risk for its 50-year life and purpose.

The siren infrastructure is not considered to exacerbate the natural hazard risk to any other persons, property or land in the wider environment. The proposed siren is located within this area given their proximity to the coastal environment, and are considered to have a functional and operational need to be located within these areas to alert coastal communities of potential tsunami threat and hazards, as such mitigating against this potential adverse effect.

For the reasons outlined above, adverse effects on the localised and wider environment are assessed as less than minor.

#### 6.4.2 Noise

The proposed tsunami siren is anticipated to infringe the permitted noise thresholds within the ODP when activated. This is not unexpected given the purpose of the siren is to alert residents within the coastal settlement in the event of possible tsunami threat.

Acoustic Advice has been prepared by Marshall Day Acoustic Engineers (refer to **Appendix 11**) which estimates the distance that the noise thresholds may be exceeded. This is based on the projected noise emissions for each siren when activated. Marshall Day estimated noise levels will be exceeded during siren activation as follows:

- Day time testing: 50 dB L<sub>Aeq</sub> will be exceeded when emitted from Residential, Rural or Coastal Zones for a distance of 1,400m during day time testing.
- Day time emergency: 50 dB L<sub>Aeq</sub> will be exceeded when emitted from Residential, Rural, and Coastal Zones for a distance of 3,300m during a day emergency.
- Night time emergency: 45 dB L<sub>Aeq</sub> will be exceeded when emitted from Residential, Rural, and Coastal Zones for a distance of 5,100m during a night time emergency.

While these thresholds are not site-specific propagation lines, they provide a useful comparison for how 'noisy' the proposed tsunami sirens will be during testing and in the during an emergency tsunami event. The noise emissions generated by the sirens during an emergency event while noisy are considered necessary. The proposed sirens are considered lifesaving infrastructure, designed to improve community resilience, readiness and response to the threat of tsunami risk.

In terms of frequency of noise exceedance, tsunami siren warnings are currently tested twice a year at the turn of daylight savings and it is intended to carry on this practice with the newly installed sirens. This testing, while operationally necessary, ensures the communities are familiar with the siren alerts and prompts good emergency evacuation practices within each community. It is designed to encourage communities to familiarise themselves with tsunami emergency evacuation practices and gathering points. To support this process, CDEM and NRC notify the public of these warning systems on their website. Given the infrequent nature of these tsunami warning and testing systems, effects on properties are considered to be temporary and experienced for a matter of minutes and overall acceptable.

Taking into account the above and the proposed restrictions to siren duration and frequency over the course of the year, the expert advice of Marshall Day Acoustic Engineers (see **Appendix 11**), adverse effects of the tsunami warning systems are managed to a level that is less than minor.

### 6.4.3 Construction Activities

Minimal earthworks are proposed to modify the site to enable the construction of the foundation pads for the masts to be installed, the TWS-295 will then be attached to the mast. No vegetation removal is proposed. Refer to the Tsunami Specifications included as **Appendix 9** for full details. This will include excavation of a maximum volume of 3.5m<sup>3</sup> over an area of 6.5m<sup>2</sup> to establish suitable levels for the foundation pads.

During construction, it is proposed to install temporary sediment and erosion control measures to mitigate any potential adverse environmental effects as a result of the proposed land disturbance. Any adverse construction effects on the wider environment are considered to be less than minor as follows:

- It is anticipated that the construction works will be able to comply with the ODP construction noise and vibration standards having regard to the nature of the proposal. The duration of works and timeframes are estimated to take no more than 10 working days to install each siren. However, it is expected that a Construction Management Plan for the works will be outlined as required should a condition of consent be applied. It is considered that any adverse effects associated with construction noise and vibration would be temporary in nature, and are considered to be less than minor;
- It is anticipated that earthworks and construction will be carried out during standard construction hours, such that any adverse lighting effects on the wider environment are not anticipated; and
- There is sufficient space at all sites and within the surrounding road network to provide parking for construction vehicles. It is considered that any adverse construction traffic effects will be temporary and able to be appropriately managed. For works occurring within the road corridor, it is anticipated that a CAR and TMP will be provided prior to commencing construction.

Overall, having regard to the above, it is considered that any adverse construction effects will be less than minor.

### 6.4.4 Archaeological and Heritage Effects

An ArchSite search has been undertaken on the proposed siren site and no archaeology or heritage items within the site have been identified. While it is recognised that the proposed tsunami siren

is located within the coastal environment where there is the potential for archaeology to exist, effects in this regard are considered to be less than minor for the following reasons:

- The proposal only involves approximately 3.5m<sup>3</sup> over an area of approximately 6.5m<sup>2</sup>, ensuring minimal disturbance of land;
- Taking into account the ArchSite assessment and overall physical works proposed, the probability of discovering archaeology is considered low;
- No sirens are proposed over known or recorded archaeological sites; and
- Should any archaeological material be encountered, typical accidental discovery protocols will be followed as set out in the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

Taking into account the above, and recognising the accidental discovery protocols required under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, adverse effects are assessed as less than minor.

#### 6.4.5 Cultural Effects

The proposed tsunami siren 80 is not located within a site that is mapped as containing a site of significance to Māori in the ODP or PDP. While there are no known Māori values of importance in this area, it is acknowledged that areas in proximity to the coast can hold importance to mana whenua.

In terms of potential impacts on waterways or the coastal marine area, the physical works associated with installing the infrastructure is considered minimal with temporary erosion and sediment control measures installed during the construction period to manage any runoff. No vegetation clearance is proposed. The proposed infrastructure does not impact access to the beach ensuring the access to mahinga kai will be maintained for mana whenua.

In terms of wider environment considerations, the proposed siren has been shared with Te Whānau Moana/Te Rorohuri hapū, with written approval included within **Appendix 2A**.

Taking the above into account, there are no known adverse effects on scheduled cultural heritage, sites of significance to Māori, or Māori cultural values.

#### 6.4.6 Built Character and Amenity

The siren will not change the existing use of the site, instead, it will provide for the function and operation of a tsunami siren warning system that mitigates the risk of tsunami hazards in established populated community. The predominant use and nature of the land will remain the same.

The tsunami siren location has been carefully selected to maximise the range of the siren alert and acoustic propagation that ensures, in the event of a tsunami, the alert will reach the most people possible. The selection criteria have taken into account topography, access to power, telecommunications connections and availability of public land. Naturally, this location is within a coastal settlement where the risk of tsunami is present. Further to this, the proposed tsunami siren infrastructure intends to build of the Region-wide natural hazard resilience plan, meeting an operation and functional need within their proposed locations.

With respect to land disturbance, the proposed earthworks are minimal and temporary, with all exposed ground constructed over or regressed as required. Construction and earthworks effects



are assessed in section 6.4.3 above and considered temporary and will be effectively managed to a level that is less than minor on wider environment amenity. Rural amenity and noise effects are assessed in section 6.4.2 above and also considered to be appropriately managed subject to conditions of consent.

The siren infrastructure does not have any associated intensity effects on wider environment amenity given they are managed remotely.

The proposed siren infrastructure, comprises a 2.5m<sup>2</sup> x 2.5m<sup>2</sup> foundation 8m height pole with a siren mounted to the top. It is proposed to install a siren type, being TWS-295 (1.78m (H) x 0.85m (W)), with a combined maximum height of 9.8m. The dimensions of the siren infrastructure are such that the GFA is not an issue.

This environment has been selected due to the resident populations that are established there.

The following comments are made with respect to built form and character:

- The proposed siren has been located in close proximity to the existing built form of public toilet building and existing vegetation create a backdrop to the proposed structure.
- The proposed siren infrastructure exceeds the height limit in this location complying with the restricted discretionary standard that provides for buildings up to 10m in height. When taking into account the scale and dimensions of the infrastructure and the nature of the built form in these locations, adverse effects are considered to be minimized to a level that is no more than minor;

Taking account of the above, overall, adverse effects associated with built character and amenity are considered to be no more than minor.

#### 6.4.7 Coastal Environment, Landscape and Visual Amenity

Siren 80 is located within an area that is subject to coastal environment overlay. The combined height of the structures exceeds the maximum height, however, complies with the permitted standard GFA standards for buildings in all locations.

While the proposed siren infrastructure does not have a measurable GFA, the structures will exceed height limits within these coastal environments with the potential for generating adverse effects on the visual amenity and natural character values of the wider environment. The combined heights of the structures will be approximately 9.8m, however, when taking into account their dimensions of the sirens which are the largest component of the infrastructure, the effects on the wider environment are considered to be relatively modest. The structures will be visible; however, they are considered to be consistent with the overall built form of the wider environment and comparable to other critical infrastructure such as overhead powerlines or telecommunication infrastructure. In accordance with this, the Landscape Assessment completed by Simon Crocker Landscape Architecture (provided as **Appendix 8**) assesses the landscape (including natural character and visual amenity) effects of the proposed activity and concludes that the resulting landscape and natural character effect of the proposal will be low.

Further, the proposal is not considered to impact any access to the coastal environment.

#### 6.4.8 Servicing

As mentioned above. The siren site has been chosen based on the topography and how the location will be able to service the new siren in terms of having access to better cellular and

satellite coverage, and have access to solar and battery power. The siren location has been confirmed as suitable from a servicing perspective.

## 6.5 Summary of Effects

---

Overall, it is considered that any adverse effects on the environment relating to this proposal will be less than minor.

## 6.6 Public Notification Conclusion

---

Having undertaken the section 95A public notification tests, the following conclusions are reached:

- Under step 1, public notification is not mandatory;
- Under step 2, public notification is not precluded;
- Under step 3, public notification is not required as it is considered that the activity will result in less than minor adverse effects; and
- Under step 4, there are no special circumstances.
- Therefore, based on the conclusions reached under steps 3 and 4, it is recommended that this application be processed without public notification.

## 7.0 Limited Notification Assessment (Sections 95B, 95E to 95G)

---

### 7.1 Assessment of Steps 1 to 4 (Sections 95B)

---

If the application is not publicly notified under section 95A, the council must follow the steps set out in section 95B to determine whether to limited notify the application. These steps are addressed in the statutory order below.

#### 7.1.1 Step 1: Certain affected protected customary rights groups must be notified

Step 1 requires limited notification where there are any affected protected customary rights groups or customary marine title groups; or affected persons under a statutory acknowledgement affecting the land.

The above does not apply to this proposal.

#### 7.1.2 Step 1: Certain affected protected customary rights groups must be notified

Step 2 describes that limited notification is precluded where all applicable rules and national environmental standards preclude limited notification; or the application is for a controlled activity (other than the subdivision of land).

In this case, the applicable rules do not preclude limited notification and the proposal is not a controlled activity. Therefore, limited notification is not precluded.

### 7.1.3 Step 3: If not precluded by step 2, certain other affected persons must be notified

Step 3 requires that, where limited notification is not precluded under step 2 above, a determination must be made as to whether any of the following persons are affected persons:

- In the case of a boundary activity, an owner of an allotment with an infringed boundary;
- In the case of any other activity, a person affected in accordance with s95E.

The application is for a boundary activity, and therefore an assessment in accordance with section 95E is required to determine whether the owner of an allotment with an infringed boundary is an affected person. This is set out below.

Overall, it is considered that any adverse effects on persons will be less than minor, and accordingly, that no persons are adversely affected.

### 7.1.4 Step 4: Further notification in special circumstances

In addition to the findings of the previous steps, the council is also required to determine whether special circumstances exist in relation to the application that warrant notification of the application to any other persons not already determined as eligible for limited notification.

In this instance, having regard to the assessment in section 6.1.4 above, it is considered that special circumstances do not apply.

## 7.2 Section 95E Statutory Matters

---

If the application is not publicly notified, a council must decide if there are any affected persons and give limited notification to those persons. A person is affected if the effects of the activity on that person are minor or more than minor (but not less than minor).

In deciding who is an affected person under section 95E:

- Adverse effects permitted by a rule in a plan or national environmental standard (the 'permitted baseline') may be disregarded;
- Only those effects that relate to a matter of control or discretion can be considered (in the case of controlled or restricted discretionary activities); and
- The adverse effects on those persons who have provided their written approval must be disregarded.

These matters were addressed in section 6.2 above, and no written approval has been obtained.

Having regard to the above provisions, an assessment is provided below.

## 7.3 Assessment of Effects on Adjacent Properties

---

Adverse effects in relation to amenity and character, dominance, shading, privacy, and noise on persons are considered below.

Wider effects, such as noise, construction activities, archaeological and heritage effects, cultural effects, built character and amenity, coastal environment, and servicing were above, and considered to be less than minor.

The following comments are made in regard to potential adverse effects on all adjacent persons:

- The proposed siren will be established to fit within the landscape and as mentioned previously, when compared to light poles and power poles, the siren is of a similar nature and height, as well as the function of them, in that they provide an operational and functional need within these environments in. The proposed siren is not considered to generate domination, overshadowing, or privacy effects for the following reasons:
  - The location of the proposed siren ensures suitable separation between existing residential units on the adjacent properties. The dwellings are separated from the siren in excess of 50m, assisting in reducing any perceived dominance effects by adjacent persons;
  - The siren is proposed to be painted with a recessive colour scheme, helping mitigate any perceived dominance through ensuring the siren blends into the surrounding area;
  - The siren infrastructure itself is comparable to a light pole and will have a siren mounted to the top measuring 1.15m (H) x 0.85m (W), ensuring the shadow cast by the infrastructure will be minimal so as not to unduly impact on adjacent land; and
  - The proposed tsunami infrastructure is not considered to result in a loss of privacy to adjacent land, as the siren is not occupied. The construction timeframes for each siren are expected to last no more than 10 working days, as such, effects are temporary.
- The siren will only infringe noise standards twice a year during bi-annual tsunami siren testing. As noted above, this testing regime will encourage and promote tsunami siren evacuation practice and familiarise communities with the warning signals associated with this activity. While it is recognised that these warning systems will be 'noisy', effects will be temporary and considered necessary to promote good CDEM practices;
- The ODP limits the establishment of emergency services such as fire, police and ambulance services. Typical effects associated with emergency services include traffic generation, hours of operation and noise that have the potential to affect the character and amenity of the surrounding environment. In this instance, effects associated with traffic generation and hours of operation will not be experienced given the targeted nature of the proposed activity. Noise effects are assessed above, and again are considered to be acceptable in this instance given the emergency nature of the siren and the general infrequency of the siren; and
- Further, as part of this proposal, NRC in conjunction with Northland Civil Defence and Emergency Services department have developed a targeted community engagement programme to support the roll out of this project. This includes a mail drop to communities where sirens will be installed prior to commencing the project. NRC will include a brochure and will establish a dedicated web page to inform the community of the project. A copy of the brochure is included as **Appendix 13**.

Taking the above into account, it is considered that any adverse effects on persons at the aforementioned properties will be less than minor in relation to amenity and character, dominance, shading, privacy, and noise effects. Wider effects, including noise, construction activities, archaeological and heritage effects, cultural effects, built character and amenity, coastal Environment, and servicing were assessed above and are considered to be less than minor.

It is considered, therefore, that there are no adversely affected persons in relation to this proposal.

### 7.3.1 Summary of Effects

Taking the above into account, it is considered that any adverse effects on persons at the aforementioned properties will be less than minor in relation to amenity and noise effects. Wider effects were assessed above and are considered to be less than minor.

It is considered, therefore, that there are no adversely affected persons in relation to this proposal.

## 7.4 Limited Notification Conclusion

---

Having undertaken the section 95B limited notification tests, the following conclusions are reached:

- Under step 1, limited notification is not mandatory;
- Under step 2, limited notification is not precluded;
- Under step 3, limited notification is not required as it is considered that the activity will not result in any adversely affected persons; and
- Under step 4, there are no special circumstances.

Therefore, it is recommended that this application be processed without limited notification.

## 8.0 Consideration of Applications (Section 104)

---

### 8.1 Statutory Matters

---

Subject to Part 2 of the Act, when considering an application for resource consent and any submissions received, a council must, in accordance with section 104(1) of the Act have regard to:

- Any actual and potential effects on the environment of allowing the activity;
- Any relevant provisions of a national environmental standard, other regulations, national policy statement, a New Zealand coastal policy statement, a regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement; a plan or proposed plan; and
- Any other matter a council considers relevant and reasonably necessary to determine the application.

As a non-complying activity, section 104D of the Act states that a council may only grant the application if:

- (a) adverse effects will be no more than minor; or
- (b) the activity is not contrary to the objectives and policies of the relevant plans.

### 8.2 Weighting of Proposed Plan Changes: Proposed Far North District Plan

---

On the 27th July Far North District Council (**FNDC**) notified their PDP.

Under the PDP, siren 80 is zoned Natural Open Space Zone and subject to Coastal Environment Overlay.

At the time of preparing this AEE, only rules identified as having immediate legal effect have been considered. This will remain the case until FNDC releases a decision on the Proposed Far North District Plan (this will occur once hearings have been completed).

## 9.0 Effects on the Environment (Section 104(1)(A))

---

Having regard to the actual and potential effects on the environment of the activity resulting from the proposal, it was concluded in the assessment above that any adverse effects relating to the proposal will be less than minor and that no persons would be adversely affected by the proposal.

Further, it is considered that the proposal will also result in positive effects including:

- The improved health and safety measures to support the wellbeing of coastal community at Tokerau Beach; and
- Improved civil defence and emergency management practices in Tokerau Beach, designed to contribute to the regions civil defence and resilience to natural hazards within Te Taitokerau Northland; and
- Currently, the sirens do not achieve the minimum National Emergency Management Agency (NEMA) standards for tsunami sirens and alerts. The proposal will ensure Te Taitokerau Northland is in line with NEMA standards and best practice.

Overall, it is considered that when taking into account the positive effects, any actual and potential adverse effects on the environment of allowing the activity are acceptable.

## 10.0 District Plan and Statutory Documents (Section 104(1)(B))

---

### 10.1 Objectives and Policies of the Far North District Plan

---

#### 10.1.1 Chapter 9.7 Conservation Zone

Siren 80 is located within the Conservation Zone which applies to areas that exist primarily for a conservation function including, in some circumstances, land adjacent to the coastal marine area where the Council has given a high priority to the protection of the land from inappropriate use and development. The purpose of the zone is to identify “conservation” areas in order to ensure the preservation of natural character, the maintenance of access to lakes, rivers and the coastal marine area and the recognition of the relationship of Māori and their culture with ancestral lands, water, sites and other taonga.

The proposed siren infrastructure is not specifically provided for by the ODP, as it does not meet the definition of any defined terms including those related to telecommunications or utility services.

The objectives and policies of Chapter 9.7 seek to protect the conservation values and ensure the use of the land is consistent with the conservation values of the site and avoiding adverse effects on the environment and on the surrounding area. Specifically, policy 9.7.4.5 specifies that the net effect of activities should not diminish the total biodiversity and ecological functioning of the values contained within the site.

While the infrastructure is not directly provided for, thus, not directly ancillary to the purpose of the zone, the siren is not considered to compromise the purpose of the zone. No vegetation clearance is proposed and only minimal land disturbance will be associated with the activity. Further, the siren infrastructure is proposed as mitigation against the risks of tsunami hazards for the district's coastal communities.

In summary, the proposed siren does not compromise natural character, the maintenance of access to the coastal marine area or the recognition of the relationship of Māori and their culture with ancestral lands, water, sites and other taonga therefore, overall, it is considered consistent with the intent of the zone.

## 10.2 Objectives and Policies of the Proposed Far North Plan

---

The proposal results in tsunami siren infrastructure being located within the Natural Open Space Zone. The proposal also interreacts with overlays that include the Coastal Environment, Coastal Flood Zone 1, 2 and 3, River Flood Hazard 10- and 100-year ARI Event, Treaty Settlement Area of Interest, and Statutory Acknowledgement Area.

For the purposes of this application, the proposal has been categorised as a Temporary Activity, which is defined as follows:

“means an activity that is temporary and limited in duration. It may include carnivals; concerts; fairs; festivals and events; markets and exhibitions; public meetings; parades; special events; sporting events; filming activities; temporary military training activities; temporary motorsport activities; and emergency response training by ambulances, **Civil Defence, Coast Guard New Zealand, Fire and Emergency New Zealand, New Zealand Police, Land Search and Rescue, or Surf Life Saving New Zealand. It also includes buildings or structures accessory to temporary activities**, temporary car parking areas, and the ancillary activities associated with the temporary activities.”

The proposal has been categorised as an Emergency Service, which is defined as follows:

“Emergency Service, means ambulances, **Civil Defence, Coastguard New Zealand, Fire and Emergency New Zealand, New Zealand Police, Land Search and Rescue, and Surf Life Saving New Zealand.**”

While the above activity definition is the most appropriate, the PDP does not specifically provide for CDEM structures like tsunami sirens. However, it does provide for noise exemptions relating to emergency services. In the Noise Chapter, the noise rules and effects standards do not apply to:

“7. any warning device or siren used by emergency services for emergency purposes (and routine testing and maintenance)”

Overall, it is considered that there is a gap within the PDP with respect to CDEM service activities, which are considered fairly unique and uncommon in this context but are nonetheless important and required support the Regions civil defence and emergency management response. The proposed tsunami siren infrastructure is pivotal to the Region's resilience plan for managing and addressing the risk of tsunami hazards within Te Taitokerau. Further, the proposal is considered to support the overall health, safety and wellbeing of the Region's communities.

On this basis, the proposal is not considered to be contrary to, but is not entirely consistent with the anticipated outcomes of the PDP.

### 10.3 Objectives and Policies of the Northland Regional Policy Statement

---

The operative Regional Policy Statement (**RPS**) for Northland contains high level policy guidance for development within the region and is the vehicle for identifying and dealing with significant resource management issues in Te Taitokerau Northland. With respect to the coastal environment, it contains objectives and policies which seek to protect and preserve the natural character of the coastal environment, whilst safeguarding the integrity, form, function and resilience of the coastal environment from natural hazards and protect significant indigenous biodiversity and habitats from inappropriate subdivision, use and development. Of particular relevance to this proposal are as follows:

- Objective 3.7 and 3.8 seek to provide for significant infrastructure that will protect health and safety of the community and recognise the importance of the long-term infrastructure.
- Objective 3.13 recognises the risk and impacts of natural hazard events. 3.13(b), (e) and (g) are of particular relevance to this proposal as they enable appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be constructed and recognise that critical infrastructure may have to be located within hazard prone areas.
- Policy 4.8 recognises that structures that have a functional need can be located within the coastal marine area and structures that will make a significant positive contribution to the local area or region.

In regards to above objectives and policies, the following is noted:

- The proposal is considered appropriate and a functional need for the reasons discussed throughout the assessment provided as part of this application.
- The tsunami sirens are a method that will mitigate coastal hazards such as tsunami by alerting the community and to ensure their safety.

On this basis, the proposal is considered to be consistent with outcomes of the RPS.

### 10.4 Objectives and Policies of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement

---

The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (**NZCPS**), prepared by the Minister of Conservation, sets out objectives and policies in order to achieve the purpose of the RMA in regards to the coastal environment of New Zealand. It contains objectives and policies which include those aimed at safeguarding the integrity, form, functioning and resilience of the coastal environment and sustaining its ecosystems, and preserving the natural character of the coastal environment.

Of particular relevance to this proposal are objectives 2, 4, 6 and policies 6, 13, 18, 19, 24 and 25 as follows:

- Objective 2 and policy 13 seek to preserve the natural character, features, and landscape values of the coastal environment.
- Objective 4 and policies 18 and 19 seek to maintain and enhance public open space within the coastal environment by ensuring public access to the coast is retained and provided for.
- Objective 6 recognises that the protection of the values of the coastal environment does not preclude use and development in appropriate places and forms within appropriate limits, and that functionally some uses and development can only be located on the coast or in the marine



area. Policy 6(2)(c) further acknowledges that there are activities with a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area.

- Policies 24 and 25 seek to identify areas that are potentially to be affected by coastal hazards such as tsunami and how to avoid or mitigate them.

In regards to above objectives and policies, the following is noted:

- The proposed siren site is not identified as an outstanding feature or landscape, and it has been established that any adverse effects on natural character will be less than minor.
- The proposed activity does not restrict public access in any way.
- The proposal is considered appropriate and have a functional and operational need to be located within the coastal environment for the reasons discussed throughout the assessment provided as part of this application.
- The tsunami siren is a method that will mitigate coastal hazards such as tsunami by alerting the community and to ensure their safety.

For the reasons noted above, it is considered that the proposal is aligned with the outcomes sought by the NZCPS.

## 10.5 Summary

---

It is considered that the proposed development is generally in accordance with the objectives and policies of the ODP, PDP, RPS and NZCPS.

## 11.0 Part 2 Matters

---

Section 5 of Part 2 identifies the purpose of the RMA as being the sustainable management of natural and physical resources. This means managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in a way that enables people and communities to provide for their social, cultural and economic well-being and health and safety while sustaining those resources for future generations, protecting the life supporting capacity of ecosystems, and avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on the environment.

Section 6 of the Act sets out a number of matters of national importance including (but not limited to) the protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes and historic heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

Section 7 identifies a number of “other matters” to be given particular regard by Council and includes (but is not limited to) Kaitiakitanga, the efficient use of natural and physical resources, the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values, and maintenance and enhancement of the quality of the environment.

Section 8 requires Council to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

Overall, as the effects of the proposal are considered to be less than minor, and the proposal accords with the relevant ODP objectives and policies, it is considered that the proposal will not offend against the general resource management principles set out in Part 2 of the Act.

## 12.0 Other Matters (Section 104(1)(C))

---

### 12.1 Record of Title Interests

---

The Record of Title for the site is not subject to interests.

## 13.0 Section 104D Non-complying Activities

---

To be able to grant consent to a non-complying activity, a council must be satisfied that either the adverse effects of the activity on the environment will be minor (s104D(1)(a)), or the proposed activity will not be contrary to the objectives and policies of a proposed plan or plan (s104D(1)(b)). This consideration is commonly known as the 'threshold test' or the 'gateway test'. If either of the limbs of the test can be passed, then the application is eligible for approval, but the proposed activity must still be considered under section 104. There is no primacy given to either of the two limbs, so if one limb can be passed then the 'test' can be considered to be passed.

As identified in the assessment above, the adverse effects of the activity on the environment will be less than minor and the proposed activity will not be contrary to the objectives and policies of the plan. As such the application can be considered under section 104 and a determination made on the application as provided by section 104B.

## 14.0 Conclusion

---

The proposal involves the construction of one siren at Ramp Road, within in the Far North District.

Based on the above report it is considered that:

- Public notification is not required as adverse effects in relation to natural hazards, noise, construction activities, archeological and heritage effects, cultural effects, built character and amenity, servicing and natural character and landscape values are considered to be less than minor;
- There are also positive effects including the health and safety of coastal communities in the Far North;
- Limited notification is not required as is not required as no persons at adjacent properties are considered to be adversely affected;
- The proposal accords with the relevant ODP, PDP, RPS and NZCPS objectives and policies; and
- The proposal is considered to be consistent with Part 2 of the Act.

It is therefore concluded that the proposal satisfies all matters the consent authority is required to assess, and that it can be granted on a non-notified basis.

## SCHEDULE

## NORTH AUCKLAND LAND DISTRICT

LOT 54, D.P. 21428, being part Allotment 4 of Section 13, Suburbs of Auckland, situated in Block IV, Titirangi Survey District: Area, 1 rood 19-9 perches, more or less. Part certificate of title, Volume 92, folio 13.

Dated at Wellington this 29th day of April 1957.

E. B. CORBETT, Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 6/1/845; D.O. R. 88)

*Reservation of Land*

PURSUANT to the Land Act 1948, the Minister of Lands hereby sets apart the land described in the Schedule hereto as a reserve for a site for a camping ground.

## SCHEDULE

## OTAGO LAND DISTRICT

SECTION 62 (formerly closed road) and Lots 1 and 2, D.P. 8295, being parts of Section 8), Block IX, Oamaru Survey District: Area, 2 acres and 7 perches, more or less. (S.O. Plan 11991.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 6/1/788; D.O. 8/232)

*Reservation of Land*

PURSUANT to the Land Act 1948, the Minister of Lands hereby sets apart the land described in the Schedule hereto as a reserve for recreation purposes.

## SCHEDULE

## NORTH AUCKLAND LAND DISTRICT

SECTIONS 26, 27, and 28, Block V, Rangaunu Survey District: Total area, 104 acres and 29 perches, more or less. (S.O. Plan 39569.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 1/1422; D.O. 8/1882)

*Reservation of Land and Vesting in the Otahuhu Borough Council*

PURSUANT to the Land Act 1948, the Minister of Lands hereby sets apart the land described in the Schedule hereto as a reserve for recreation purposes and, further, pursuant to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, vests the said reserve in the Mayor, Councillors, and Citizens of the Borough of Otahuhu, in trust, for that purpose.

## SCHEDULE

## NORTH AUCKLAND LAND DISTRICT

LOT 34, D.P. 39830, being part Fairburn's O.L.C. 269a, situated in Block VI, Otahuhu Survey District: Area, 2 acres and 20 perches, more or less. Part certificate of title, Volume 1100, folio 31.

Dated at Wellington this 30th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 1/1107/1; D.O. 8/1857)

*Reservation of Land and Vesting in the Christchurch City Council*

PURSUANT to the Land Act 1948, the Minister of Lands hereby sets apart the land described in the Schedule hereto as a reserve for recreation purposes and, further, pursuant to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, vests the said reserve in the Mayor, Councillors, and Citizens of the City of Christchurch, in trust, for that purpose.

## SCHEDULE

## CANTERBURY LAND DISTRICT

RESERVE 4856, situated in Block XII, Christchurch Survey District, City of Christchurch: Area, 3 roods 25-4 perches, more or less. (Shown as Lot 72, D.P. 18848, being part Rural Section 185.) Part certificate of title, Volume 543, folio 34.

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 1/1107/9; D.O. 8/3/2/2)

*Vesting a Reserve in the Taupo County Commissioner*

PURSUANT to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, the Minister of Lands hereby vests the reserve described in the Schedule hereto in the Taupo County Commissioner, in trust, for recreation purposes.

## SCHEDULE

## WELLINGTON LAND DISTRICT

SECTION 27, Town of Turangi, situated in Block XI, Puketū Survey District: Area, 4 acres, more or less. (S.O. Plan 17929.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 22/3031; D.O. 8/3/167)

*Change of the Purpose of Part of a Reserve and Vesting in the Kowai County Council*

PURSUANT to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, the Minister of Lands hereby changes the purpose of that part of the reserve described in the Schedule hereto from a reserve for a public road to a reserve for plantation purposes and, further, vests the said reserve in the Chairman, Councillors, and Inhabitants of the County of Kowai, in trust, for the purpose of plantation.

## SCHEDULE

## CANTERBURY LAND DISTRICT

PART Reserve 3107 (now known as Reserve 4868), situated in Block VIII, Grey Survey District: Area, 16 perches, more or less. As shown on the plan marked L. and S. 29848a deposited in the Head Office, Department of Lands and Survey at Wellington, and thereon edged red. (S.O. Plan 9128.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 29848; D.O. 8/368)

*Change of the Purpose of a Reserve*

PURSUANT to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, the Minister of Lands hereby changes the purpose of the reserve described in the Schedule hereto from a reserve for a gravel pit to a reserve for plantation purposes.

## SCHEDULE

## CANTERBURY LAND DISTRICT

RESERVE 1930, situated in Block VIII, Grey Survey District: Area, 14 acres 3 roods 14 perches, more or less. (S.O. Plan 13211.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 29848; D.O. 8/368)

*Revocation of the Reservation Over a Reserve*

PURSUANT to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, the Minister of Lands hereby revokes the reservation as a reserve for public buildings over the land described in the Schedule hereto.

## SCHEDULE

## WELLINGTON LAND DISTRICT

SECTION 65, Block IV, Mangahao Survey District (formerly described as Section 65, Block IV, Mangatainoka Village): Area, 1 acre, more or less. (S.O. Plan 12615.)

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 6/1/959; D.O. R. 129)

*Revocation of the Reservation Over a Reserve*

PURSUANT to the Reserves and Domains Act 1953, the Minister of Lands hereby revokes the reservation as a reserve for plantation purposes over the land described in the Schedule hereto.

## SCHEDULE

## NORTH AUCKLAND LAND DISTRICT

LOT 44, D.P. 17417, being part Allotment 74, Parish of Titirangi, situated in Block VIII, Titirangi Survey District: Area, 9-2 perches, more or less. Part certificate of title, Volume 362, folio 193.

Dated at Wellington this 24th day of April 1957.

S. W. SMITH, for the Minister of Lands.

(L. and S. H.O. 6/1/818; D.O. 8/1816)

## Laura Bowman

---

**From:** Nina Raharuhi <nraharuhi@gmail.com>  
**Sent:** Saturday, 17 August 2024 6:18 pm  
**To:** Brendon Gray  
**Subject:** Re: Ramp Road siren

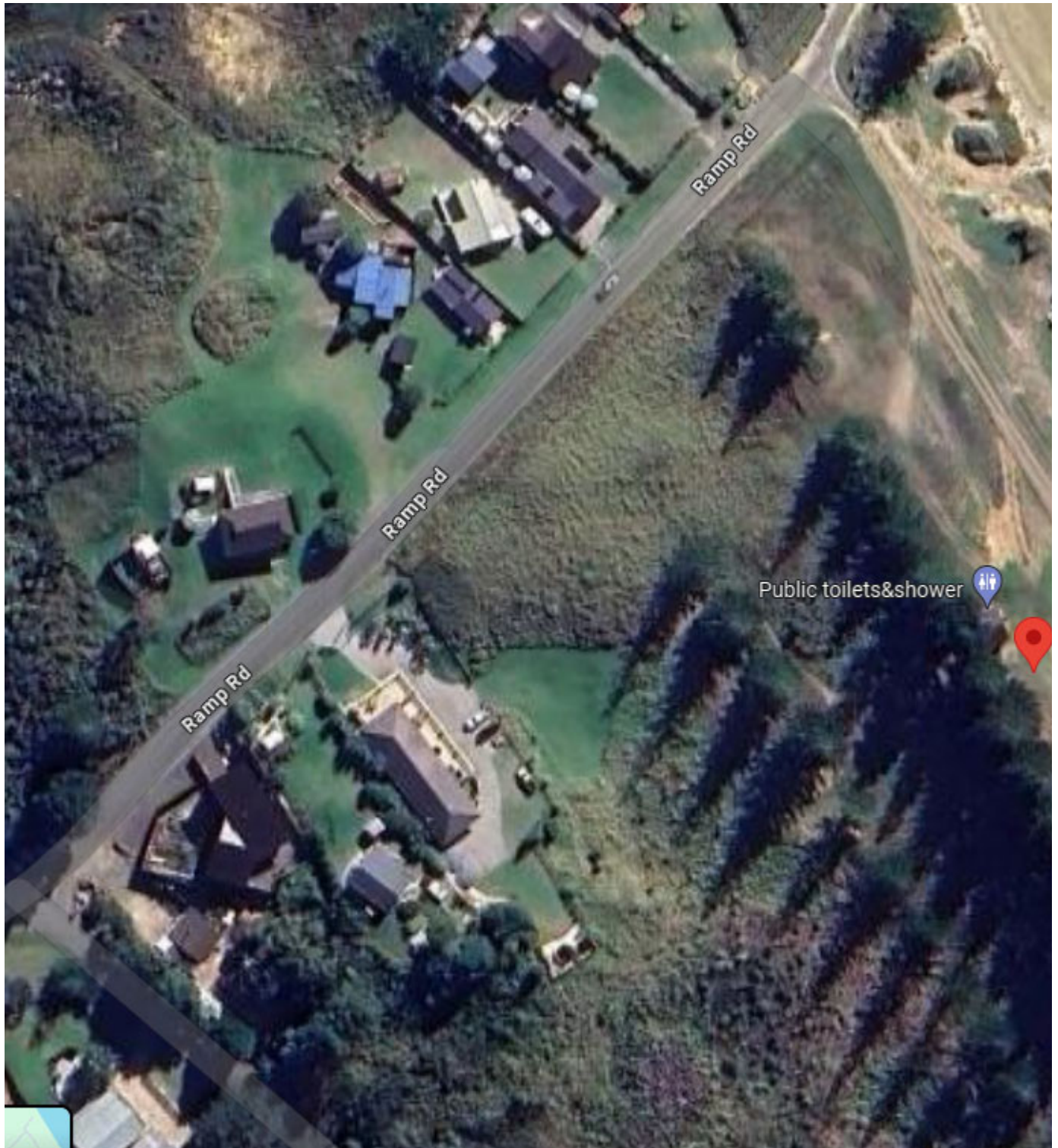
Kia ora Brendon,  
Yes I agree with the location.  
Weather is miserable. I am in Auckland this wkend hope to catch up soon.  
Takecare  
Nina

On Thu, 15 Aug 2024 at 12:48 PM, Brendon Gray <[brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz)> wrote:

Hi Nina,

Sorry that I've been so quiet lately. How are you?

We are looking at placing the Ramp Road siren near the FNDC toilet block as you had indicated was your preference. Can you please confirm that from your perspective, that is an acceptable location?



I'm looking at coming up this weekend, so will try to get there to take some photos (assuming the weather isn't too bad, or the fishing too good 😊 ).

Ngā mihi mahana

**Brendon Gray**

Emergency Management Specialist – Tsunami Projects

**Northland Emergency Management Group » Te Kaunihera ā rohe o Te Taitokerau**

Check out the Northland [Tsunami Siren Replacement Project](#) here..



P 0800 002 004 » W [www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/)



---

**From:** Nina Raharuhi <[nraharuhi@gmail.com](mailto:nraharuhi@gmail.com)>  
**Sent:** Wednesday, May 29, 2024 5:49 AM  
**To:** Brendon Gray <[brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz)>  
**Cc:** Sarah Boniface <[sarahboniface@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:sarahboniface@nrc.govt.nz)>  
**Subject:** Re: Ramp Road siren

Mōrena Brendon,

Thank you for your updates. Good work on securing a siren for ramp rd. Curious to know why you want to relocate it inland more?

I do not know alot of residence on that road but happy to do a door knock with you and support you giving them an update. Perhaps have some pamphlets ready to do a letter box drop?

Let me know if you can make it up this weekend and hopefully we can meet up.

Ngā mihi mahana (warm thanks))

Nina Raharuhi

Karikari Community Civil Defence Lead

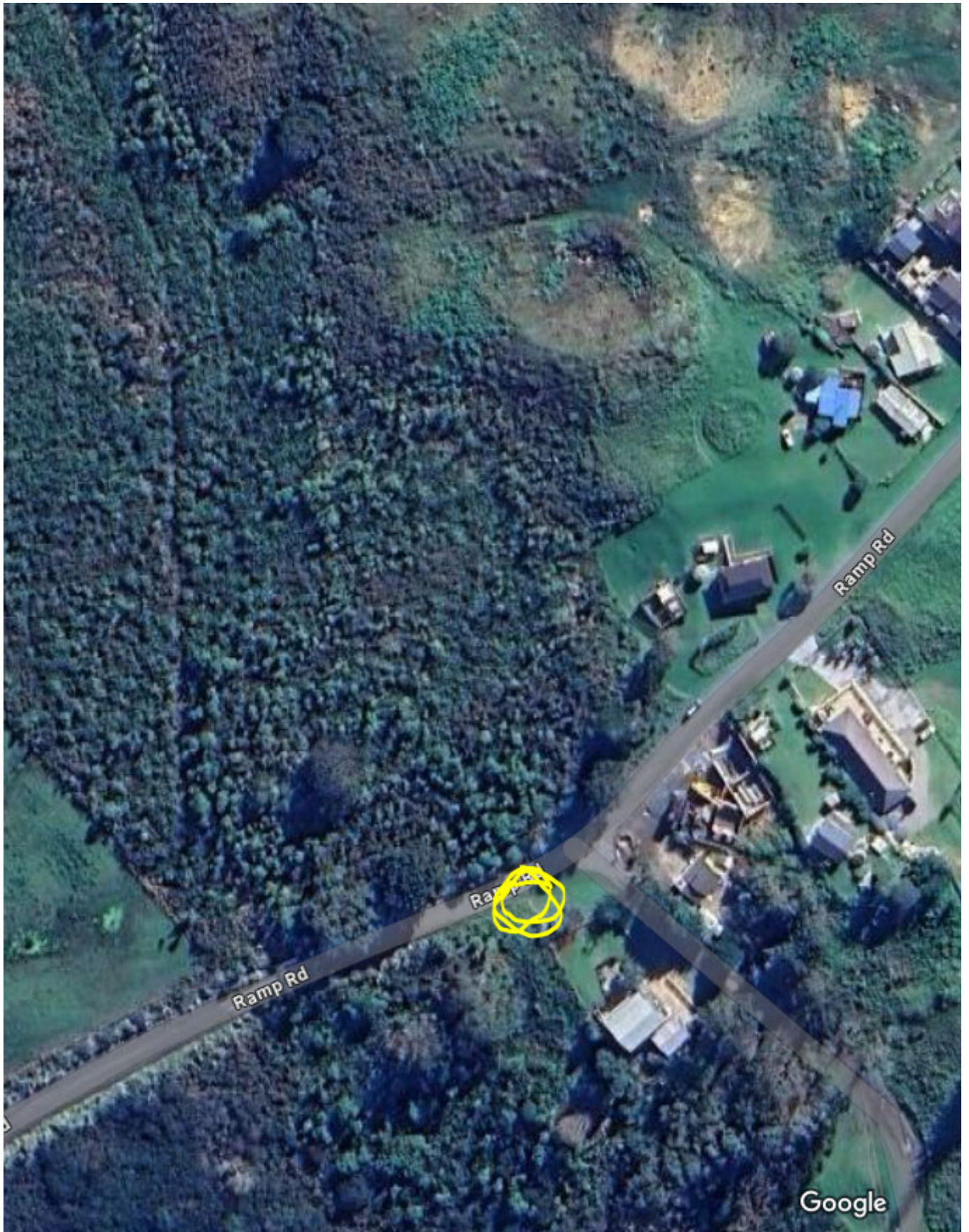
On Tue, 28 May 2024 at 8:50 AM, Brendon Gray <[brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz)> wrote:

Kia ora Nina,

How are you? Sorry I haven't been back in touch in ages. I've been dealing with a lot of pushback in Whangarei with people who are putting more importance on their view than other peoples lives. It's been quite the struggle.

I have good news. We have approval to install a siren into Ramp Road. We don't have a location yet, but that is step one sorted at last.

I'm thinking of placing it here (below) but I need to check it out more and get the appropriate permissions of course.



If you know the people in the neighbouring properties, it would be great to let them know what we are thinking.



I've also done some work around relocating the Whatuwhiwhi siren. There isn't sufficient safe space at the intersection of Whatuwhiwhi Road and Matariki Place, so we will go ahead with moving it next to the toilet block in front of the campground so we get it closer to the Marae.

I'm hoping to get up there this weekend, and it would be awesome to catch up if you are available? Once I'm certain I'll be heading up, I'll try to get in touch with you.

Ngā mihi mahana

**Brendon Gray**

Emergency Management Specialist – Tsunami Projects

**Northland Emergency Management Group » Te Kaunihera ā rohe o Te Taitokerau**

Check out the Northland [Tsunami Siren Replacement Project here..](#)



P 0800 002 004 » W [www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/)



## Laura Bowman

---

**Subject:** FW: Last FNDC resource consents for Tsunami Sirens  
**Attachments:** 98 - Rawhiti.pdf; 105 - Koutu Point School.pdf; 78 - Mangonui.pdf; 80 - Ramp Road.pdf; 83 - Karikari Hall.pdf

Ngā mihi | Kind regards,

**LAURA BOWMAN**  
Planner  
027 361 7065  
LauraB@barker.co.nz



barker.co.nz 

---

This email and any attachments are confidential. They may contain privileged information or copyright material. If you are not an intended recipient, please do not read, copy, use or disclose the contents without authorisation and we request you delete it and contact us at once by return email.

---


**From:** Katie May <Katie.May@fndc.govt.nz>  
**Sent:** Monday, 26 August 2024 1:19 pm  
**To:** Brendon Gray <brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz>; Estee Rapatini <Estee.Rapatini@fndc.govt.nz>; Cushla Jordan <cushla.jordan@fndc.govt.nz>  
**Cc:** Bill Hutchinson <billh@nrc.govt.nz>; Ruben Garcia <Ruben.Garcia@fndc.govt.nz>  
**Subject:** RE: Last FNDC resource consents for Tsunami Sirens

Kia ora Brendan,

Thank you for the update, your maps look to be the same vintage as ours so was easy to match up locations! Please find below comments from myself on behalf of district facilities;

- Ramp Rd is in recreation reserve – as asset manager for recreation reserves, I am ok for this to proceed.
- Karikari Hall, Koutu Point and Mangonui are all road reserves and as such I have included [@Cushla Jordan](#) for comment.

Nga mihi,  
Katie

 **Katie May**  
Asset Manager - District Facilities - Assets and Project Delivery  
M 0273938456 | P 6494015273 | [Katie.May@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:Katie.May@fndc.govt.nz)  
Te Kaunihera o Te Hiku o te Ika | Far North District Council

---

Pokapū Kōrero 24-hāora | 24-hour Contact Centre 0800 920 029  
[fndc.govt.nz](http://fndc.govt.nz)



---

**From:** Brendon Gray <[brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:brendon.gray@nrc.govt.nz)>  
**Sent:** Thursday, August 22, 2024 10:47 AM

To: Estee Rapatini <Estee.Rapatini@fndc.govt.nz>; Katie May <Katie.May@fndc.govt.nz>

Cc: Bill Hutchinson <billh@nrc.govt.nz>; Ruben Garcia <Ruben.Garcia@fndc.govt.nz>

Subject: Last FNDC resource consents for Tsunami Sirens

**CAUTION:** This email originated from outside Far North District Council.  
Do not click links or open attachments unless you recognise the sender and know the content is safe.

Kia ora koutou,

Can I please get FNDC’s approval to use these sites as locations for new tsunami sirens?

Some of these are location changes for sites that FNDC had previously approved. We’ve had meetings with Hapu (primarily) and other community members, and have had to make some changes. These are all on FNDC owned land and this is to seek your approval as the landowner. These sites will all be going through the resource consent process, with the application (hopefully) being submitted next week.

S127					
Siren		Area	Latitude	Longitude	Change
83	293	Karikari Hall (now Whatuwhiwhi reserve)	-34.87523	173.38881	Was previously by the community could move it
105	293	Koutu Point	- 35.473944	173.406124	Not enough width in prep
78	295	Mangonui	-34.98997	173.534996	Was previously approved in Geo the location as the
80	295	Ramp Road – Karikari (formerly Cable Bay)	- 34.944837	173.383711	
98	295	Rawhiti Marae	-35.2315	174.2606	

Maps of each site are attached. Please forgive the age of the aerial photos.

Ngā mihi mahana

**Brendon Gray**

Emergency Management Specialist – Tsunami Projects

**Northland Emergency Management Group » Te Kaunihera ā rohe o Te Taitokerau**

Check out the Northland [Tsunami Siren Replacement Project here..](#)



P 0800 002 004 » W [www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence/)



## DECISION ON LAND USE CONSENT APPLICATION UNDER THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991

### Decision

Pursuant to section 34(1) and sections 104, 104B and Part 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), the Far North District Council **grants** land use resource consent for the following:

<b>Council Reference:</b>	2240061-RMALUC
<b>Applicant:</b>	Northland Regional Council
<b>Property Address:</b>	Long Beach Road, Russell 0202
<b>Legal Description:</b>	Sec 4 SO 364056
<b>Description of Application:</b>	To construct and install 21 Tsunami Sirens across the Far North District to Support Northland Civil Defence (CDEM) response to Tsunami Risk. Consent is required for a Discretionary Activity.

### Conditions

Pursuant to sections 108 of the Act, this consent is granted subject to the following conditions:

#### *General Conditions*

1. The activity shall be carried out in accordance with the approved plans prepared by Northland Regional Council, referenced Northland Tsunami Siren Network, drawings numbered 230702/02 – 230703/15 dated 07/23, and attached to this consent with the Council's "Approved Stamp" affixed to them.

#### *Pre Construction Conditions*

2. Prior to the commencement of any physical work authorised under this consent, a Construction Management Plan ("CMP") shall be provided to Council's Engineer, or their delegated representative for certification.
3. Prior to the commencement of any physical work within the Council's road reserve, the Consent Holder shall submit a Corridor Access Request ("CAR") application, including a Traffic Management Plan/s, to the Northern Transportation Alliance Corridor Access Manager or delegated representative and obtain approval.
4. At least 30 working days prior to the commencement of construction works authorised as part of this resource consent, the consent holder shall submit a Temporary Traffic Management Plan (TMP) to the NTA Corridor Access Specialist for certification of the plan.

### *Earthworks conditions*

5. The consent holder shall ensure stormwater diversion and silt control measures are in place in accordance with the Erosion and Sediment Control Guide for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region (GD05) prior to the commencement of earthworks. Photographic evidence of ESP measures being in place are to be emailed to FNDC Team Leader Monitoring and Compliance [RCmonitoring@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:RCmonitoring@fndc.govt.nz) referencing 2240061 – RMALUC.
6. The consent holder shall ensure that all earthwork operations are carried out in a way that reduces the risk of slope instability and soil erosion. To reduce and/or minimize any slope failures, effective mitigation measures must be constructed as needed.

### *Operational Conditions*

7. The tsunami siren may be tested twice a year at the turn of daylight savings. Each test shall be undertaken for a maximum duration of two minutes during the daytime. Testing of the sirens shall not occur at night.

## **Advice Notes**

### **Lapsing of Consent**

1. *Pursuant to section 125 of the Act, this resource consent will lapse 5 years after the date of commencement of consent unless, before the consent lapses;*
  - a) *The consent is given effect to; or*
  - b) *An application is made to the Council to extend the period of consent, and the council decides to grant an extension after taking into account the statutory considerations, set out in section 125(1)(b) of the Act.*

### **Right of Objection**

2. *If you are dissatisfied with the decision or any part of it, you have the right (pursuant to section 357A of the Act) to object to the decision. The objection must be in writing, stating reasons for the objection and must be received by Council within 15 working days of the receipt of this decision.*

### **Archaeological Sites**

3. *Archaeological sites are protected pursuant to the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. It is an offence, pursuant to the Act, to modify, damage or destroy an archaeological site without an archaeological authority issued pursuant to that Act. Should any site be inadvertently uncovered, the procedure is that work should cease, with the Trust and local iwi consulted immediately. The New Zealand Police should also be consulted if the discovery includes koiwi (human remains). A copy of Heritage New Zealand's Archaeological Discovery Protocol (ADP) is attached for your information. This should be made available to all person(s) working on site.*

## **Reasons for the Decision**

1. By way of an earlier report that is contained within the electronic file of this consent, it was determined that pursuant to sections 95A and 95B of the Act the proposed activity will not have, and is not likely to have, adverse effects on the environment that are more

than minor, there are also no affected persons and no special circumstances exist. Therefore, under delegated authority, it was determined that the application be processed without notification.

2. The application is for a Discretionary activity resource consent as such under section 104 the Council can consider all relevant matters.
3. In regard to section 104(1)(a) of the Act the actual and potential effects of the proposal will be acceptable as:
  - a. The permitted baseline is not relevant in this instance.
  - b. The receiving environment is as described in Section 3 of the notification assessment. There are no known granted but unimplemented consents of relevance to the application.
  - c. Access and traffic effects are less than minor as construction works will be short in duration and the safe operation of the roading network will be maintained during the works.
  - d. Adverse effects associated with landscape character and visual amenity values are less than minor due to the small footprint of the structures and that they will not result in domination, overshadowing or loss of privacy effects.
  - e. Overall, adverse effects associated with aural amenity values from construction the sirens are considered to be less than minor. However, adverse effects associated with aural amenity values from the operation of the sirens are considered to be minor given the testing proposed.
  - f. Effects on Cultural and Archaeological Values are less than minor
  - g. The proposal will also result in positive effects, including:
    - Provide for the safety for coastal communities across the Far North District;
    - Improve civil defence and emergency management practices within the District; and
    - The proposal will ensure Te Taitokerau Northland is in line with NEMA standards and best practice (which current sirens do not achieve).
4. In regard to section 104(1)(ab) of the Act there are no offsetting or environmental compensation measures proposed or agreed to by the applicant for the activity.
5. In regard to section 104(1)(b) of the Act the following statutory documents are considered to be relevant to the application:
  - a. New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011,
  - b. Northland Regional Policy Statement 2016,
  - c. Operative Far North District Plan 2009,
  - d. Proposed Far North District Plan 2022

The activity is consistent with these documents for the reasons set out in pages 23- 25 of the Assessment of Environmental Effects submitted with the application. In particular:

*New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011 (NZCPS)*

Of particular relevance to this proposal are the NZCPS objectives 2, 4, 6 and policies 6, 13, 18, 19, 24 and 25. The following comments are made in regards to the relevant objectives and policies:

- The sirens are predominately not identified as an outstanding feature or landscape, and it has been established that any adverse effects on natural character will be less than minor.
- The proposed activity does not restrict public access in any way.
- The proposal is considered appropriate and have a functional and operational need to be located within the coastal environment for the reasons discussed throughout the assessment provided as part of this application.
- The tsunami sirens are a method that will mitigate coastal hazards such as tsunami by alerting the community and to ensure their safety.

For the reasons noted above, it is considered that the proposal is aligned with the outcomes sought by the NZCPS.

*Northland Regional Policy Statement 2016 (RPS)*

Of particular relevance to this proposal are RPS objectives 3.7, 3.8, 3.13 and policy 4.8.

In regards to those objectives and policies, the following is noted:

- The proposal is considered appropriate and a functional need for the reasons discussed throughout the assessment provided as part of this application.
- The tsunami sirens are a method that will mitigate coastal hazards such as tsunami by alerting the community and to ensure their safety.

On this basis, the proposal is considered to be consistent with outcomes of the RPS.

*Operative Far North District Plan*

The proposal results in tsunami siren infrastructure being located within the General Coastal, Conservation, Coastal Living, Recreational Activities, Industrial, Residential, Coastal Residential, and Rural Living Zones.

Overall, it is considered that there is a gap within the ODP with respect to CDEM service activities and emergency services. Tsunami siren infrastructure is considered a fairly unique and uncommon in this context but are nonetheless important and required support the regions civil defence and emergency management response to the risk of tsunami hazards within the region.

Lifesaving infrastructure supports and provides for the health, safety and wellbeing of the communities of the Far North while appropriately managing effects on the localised and wider environment. While the ODP does not specifically provide for the proposed tsunami siren activity, it is considered that the proposal is not contrary to the anticipated outcomes of the ODP.

*Proposed Far North District Plan*

The proposal results in tsunami siren infrastructure being located within the Rural Production, Natural open space, Rural Lifestyle, Sport and Active Recreation, Settlement, Open Space, General Residential, and Rural Residential Zones. The proposal also interreacts with overlays that include the Coastal Environment, Coastal Flood Zone 1, 2 and 3, Notable Tree (36 and 141), River Flood Hazard 10- and 100-year ARI Event, Heritage Area – Part A – The Strand and Part C – Christ Church, High Natural Character (204 and 170), Treaty Settlement Area of Interest, Statutory Acknowledgement Area, Rāwene Heritage Area – Part B and Part A, and pedestrian frontage.

Overall, it is considered that there is a gap within the PDP with respect to CDEM service activities, which are considered fairly unique and uncommon in this context but are nonetheless important and required support the Regions civil defence and emergency management response. The proposed tsunami siren infrastructure is pivotal to the Region's resilience plan for managing and addressing the risk of tsunami hazards within Te Taitokerau. Further, the proposal is considered to support the overall health, safety and wellbeing of the Region's communities.

On this basis, the proposal is not considered to be contrary to, but is not entirely consistent with the anticipated outcomes of the PDP.

### *Weighting*

For this resource consent application, the relevant provisions of both an operative and any proposed plan must be considered. Weighting is relevant if different outcomes arise from assessments of objectives and policies under both the operative and proposed plans.

As the outcomes sought are the same under the operative and the proposed plan frameworks, no weighting is necessary.

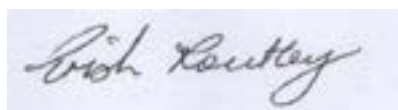
6. In regard to section 104(1)(c) of the Act there are no other matters relevant to the application.
7. Based on the assessment above the activity will be consistent with Part 2 of the Act.

The activity will avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential adverse effects on the environment while providing for the sustainable management of natural and physical resources and is therefore in keeping with the Purpose and Principles of the Act. There are no matters under section 6 that are relevant to the application. The proposal is an efficient use and development of the sites that will maintain existing amenity values without compromising the quality of the environment. The activity is not considered to raise any issues in regard to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

8. Overall, for the reasons above it is appropriate for consent to be granted subject to the imposed conditions.

## **Approval**

This resource consent has been prepared by Elisha Oldridge, Senior Planner. I have reviewed this and the associated information (including the application and electronic file material) and for the reasons and subject to the conditions above, and under delegated authority, grant this resource consent.



Patricia (Trish) Routley

Date: 18/12/2023

**Manager Resource Consents**



**DECISION ON LAND USE CONSENT APPLICATION  
UNDER THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991**

**Decision**

Pursuant to section 34(1) and sections 104, 104B, and 104D and Part 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), the Far North District Council **grants** land use resource consent, subject to the conditions listed below, to:

**Applicant:** Northland Regional Council

**Council Reference:** 2240307-RMALUC

**Property Address:** Various

Legal Description	Siren #	Address	Legal Description
:	62	End of Tapeka Road, Russell	Lot 105 Deposited Plan 61184
	70	Matauri Bay Carpark, Matauri Bay Road	Lot 89 DP 393664 Road Way Block, Lot 189 DP 393664 Road Way and Lot 189 DP 39366
	71	Te Ngaere Toilets, Wainui Road	Lot 2 DP 48077
	76	Marlin Drive, Taupo Bay	Lot 117 DP 56267
	87	State Highway 1, Pukenui, Far North (opposite 4075 Far North Road)	Section 1 Survey Office Plan 6607311/68901
	89	Waipapakauri Beach Toilets, West Coast Road, Waipapakauri	Road reserve (Parcel ID 5236498)
	91	255 Foreshore Road, Ahipara, Kaitaia	Road Reserve (Parcel ID: 5237497)

**The activities to which this decision relates are listed below:**

To install and operate Tsunami Sirens at various locations across the Far North District.

**Table 1:** Siren 62: Conservation Zone

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
9.7.5.1.3 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this complies with the maximum height of 10m under the RDA rule.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.1.6 Screening from neighbours	The sirens will not be screened, and no landscaping is proposed.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.1.8 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.3 Discretionary Activities	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal conservation activities of the site in accordance with 9.7.5.1.1	<b>Non-complying</b>
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	The siren will be approximately 14m from the CMA, infringing the permitted setback of 30m by 16m.	<b>Non-complying</b>

**Table 2:** Siren 70: General Coastal Zone (Outstanding Landscape)

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
10.6.5.1.5 Sunlight	The siren cannot comply with the HIRB and is setback 2.03m from the nearest boundary.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
10.6.5.1.7 Setback from boundaries	The siren is 2.03m from the nearest site boundary, this cannot comply with the minimum setback of 10m. Therefore, infringes the rule by 7.97m.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
10.6.5.1.10 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
10.6.5.1.4 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this will also infringe the Restricted Discretionary Activity rule maximum height of 9m.	<b>Discretionary</b>

**Table 3:** Siren 71: Recreational Activities Zone (Outstanding Landscape)

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
9.6.5.1.3 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will	<b>Restricted</b>

	infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this complies with the maximum height of 10m under the Restricted Discretionary Activity rule.	<b>Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.4 Sunlight	The siren cannot comply with the HIRB, the siren is setback 4.91m from the nearest boundary and is 9.123m height.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.12 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.3 Discretionary Activities	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal recreation activities of the site in accordance with 9.6.5.1.1	<b>Non-complying</b>
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	The siren will be approximately 22m from the CMA, infringing the permitted setback of 30m by 8m.	<b>Discretionary</b>

**Table 4:** Siren 76: Recreational Activities Zone

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
9.6.5.1.3 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this complies with the maximum height of 10m under the Restricted Discretionary Activity rule.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.4 Sunlight	The siren cannot comply with the HIRB, the siren is setback 4.19m from the nearest boundary and is 9.123m height.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.9 Screening for Neighbours	The sirens will not be screened, and no landscaping is proposed.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.12 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.3 Discretionary Activities	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal recreation activities of the site in accordance with 9.6.5.1.1	<b>Non-complying</b>

**Table 5:** Siren 87: Conservation Zone

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
9.7.5.1.3 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this complies with the	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>

	maximum height of 10m under the RDA rule.	
9.7.5.1.6 Screening from neighbours	The sirens will not be screened, and no landscaping is proposed.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.1.8 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.3 Discretionary Activities	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal conservation activities of the site in accordance with 9.7.5.1.1	<b>Non-complying</b>
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	The siren will be approximately 14m from the CMA, infringing the permitted setback of 30m by 16m.	<b>Non-complying</b>

**Table 6:** Siren 89: Recreational Activities Zone

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
9.6.5.1.3 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this complies with the maximum height of 10m under the Restricted Discretionary Activity rule.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.9 Screening for Neighbours	The sirens will not be screened, and no landscaping is proposed.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.1.12 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.6.5.3 Discretionary Activities	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal recreation activities of the site in accordance with 9.6.5.1.1	<b>Non-complying</b>

**Table 7:** Siren 91: Residential Zone (Te Tai Hauauru Statutory Acknowledgement Area)

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
7.6.5.1.4 Building Height	The siren is proposed to be 9.123m high, this will infringe the permitted 8m height by 1.123m. As the siren is 9.123m high, this will infringe the RDA rule maximum height of 9m.	<b>Discretionary</b>
7.6.5.1.8 Screening for Neighbours:	The sirens will not be screened, and no landscaping is proposed.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
7.6.5.1.15 Noise	The siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold.	<b>Restricted Discretionary</b>

12.4.6.1.1 Coastal Hazard 2 Areas	The siren will be located within CHA 2 and no report has been provided so it will not meet the controlled activity status.	<b>Discretionary</b>
12.4.6.3.1 Coastal Hazard 1 Areas:	The siren will be located within CHA 1 and no report has been provided so it will not meet the discretionary activity status	<b>Non-complying</b>
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	The siren will be approximately 15m from the CMA, infringing the permitted setback of 26m.	<b>Non-complying</b>

# Conditions

Pursuant to sections 108 and 108AA of the Act, this consent is granted subject to the following conditions:

## General Accordance Condition

1. The activity shall be carried out in general accordance with:
  - a) the approved plans prepared by prepared by Northland Regional Council, referenced Northland Tsunami Siren Network, drawings numbered 231203/02,05,09,16,19,31,33 and 34 dated 07/23, and attached to this consent with the Council's "Approved Stamp" affixed to it; and
  - b) all the supporting documents and additional information submitted with the application, detailed below, and all referenced by Council as 2240307-RMALUC:
    - i. Application form and Assessment of Environmental Effects prepared by Barker and Associates, dated 19 January 2024; and
    - ii. Siren Location Maps (Appendix 3 to the application) amended by the final response to further information; and
    - iii. Landscape and Visual Assessment prepared by Simon Cocker Landscape Architecture and dated 29 November 2023; and
    - iv. Construction Management Plan prepared by Tutakaka Consultants and approved by Council on 19 March 2023;
    - v. Interim response to further information requested prepared by Barker and Associates dated 19 March 2024, and
    - vi. Final response to further information prepared by Barker and Associates and dated 3 April 2024.
2. The sirens shall be located as follows, and as generally shown on the Siren Location Maps (Appendix 3 to the application referenced by Council as 2240307-RMALUC and amended by the final response to further information):

Siren #	Address	Legal Description
62	End of Tapeka Road, Russell	Lot 105 Deposited Plan 61184
70	Matauri Bay Carpark, Matauri Bay Road	Lot 89 DP 393664 Road Way Block, Lot 189 DP 393664 Road Way and Lot 189 DP 39366
71	Te Ngaere Toilets, Wainui Road	Lot 2 DP 48077
76	Marlin Drive, Taupo Bay	Lot 117 DP 56267
87	State Highway 1, Pukenui, Far North (opposite 4075 Far North Road)	Section 1 Survey Office Plan 6607311/68901
89	Waipapakauri Beach Toilets, West Coast Road, Waipapakauri	Road reserve (Parcel ID 5236498)
91	255 Foreshore Road, Ahipara, Kaitaia	Road Reserve (Parcel ID: 5237497)

### **Duration of Consent**

3. Under section 125 of the RMA, this consent lapses five years after the date it is granted unless:
  - a. The consent is given effect to; or
  - b. The council extends the period after which the consent lapses.

### **Prior to Commencement of Construction/ Physical Works**

4. Prior to the commencement of any physical work within the Council's road reserve, the Consent Holder shall submit a Corridor Access Request ("CAR") application, including a Traffic Management Plan/s, to the Northern Transportation Alliance Corridor Access Manager or delegated representative and obtain approval.

### **Earthworks**

5. The consent holder shall ensure stormwater diversion and silt control measures are in place in accordance with the Erosion and Sediment Control Guide for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region (GD05) prior to the commencement of earthworks.

Photographic evidence of ESP measures being in place are to be emailed to FNDC Team Leader Monitoring and Compliance RCmonitoring@fndc.govt.nz referencing 2240061 – RMALUC.

6. The consent holder shall ensure that all earthwork operations are carried out in a way that reduces the risk of slope instability and soil erosion. To reduce and/or minimize any slope failures, effective mitigation measures must be constructed as needed.

### **During Construction / Physical Works**

7. The construction activity shall be undertaken as per the approved Construction Management Plan referenced under Condition 1 of this consent and as per the Traffic Management Plan required under Condition 3 of this consent.
8. All construction works associated with the implementation of this resource consent shall only be carried out:
  - a. Monday to Friday – between the hours of 7:00am and 7:00pm
  - b. Saturday – between the hours of 7.30am and 6:00pm

No works shall be carried out on Sundays or public holidays.

9. For Sirens 62, 71 and 76, the monopole structure for the tsunami sirens shall be finished with a dark and recessive colour (<30% LRV).

Following construction, written confirmation from a suitably qualified Landscape Architect and/ or other evidence to demonstrate that the sirens achieved a low

reflectivity value of less than 30%, shall be provided to the approval of Council's RMA Compliance Officer (or delegated representative).

### **During Operation**

10. The tsunami siren may be tested twice a year at the turn of daylight savings. Each test shall be undertaken for a maximum duration of two minutes during the daytime. Testing of the sirens shall not occur at night.

#### **Advice note:**

*This condition relates solely to the testing of Tsunami Sirens. In the event of an actual or potential tsunami threat, the Siren can be activated at any time for any length of time necessary.*

### **Advice Notes**

#### **Right of Objection**

1. *If you are dissatisfied with the decision or any part of it, you have the right (pursuant to section 357A of the Act) to object to the decision. The objection must be in writing, stating reasons for the objection and must be received by Council within 15 working days of the receipt of this decision.*

#### **Archaeological Sites**

2. *Archaeological sites are protected pursuant to the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. It is an offence, pursuant to the Act, to modify, damage or destroy an archaeological site without an archaeological authority issued pursuant to that Act. Should any site be inadvertently uncovered, the procedure is that work should cease, with the Trust and local iwi consulted immediately. The New Zealand Police should also be consulted if the discovery includes koiwi (human remains). A copy of Heritage New Zealand's Archaeological Discovery Protocol (ADP) is attached for your information. This should be made available to all person(s) working on site.*



## Reasons for the Decision

1. By way of an earlier report that is contained within the electronic file of this consent, it was determined that pursuant to sections 95A and 95B of the Act the proposed activity will not have, and is not likely to have, adverse effects on the environment that are more than minor, there are also no affected persons, and no special circumstances exist. Therefore, under delegated authority, it was determined that the application be processed without notification.
2. The application is for Discretionary and Non-Complying activity resource consents as such under section 104 the Council can consider all relevant matters. These matters are addressed below.
3. In regard to section 104(1)(a) of the Act the actual and potential effects of the proposal will be acceptable as:
  - a. Whilst the noise emitted from the sirens will exceed the thresholds for the relevant zones, the sirens will only sound on two occasions;
    - during bi-annual testing at the turn of daylight savings, in which testing will be undertaken during the day and for no more than two minutes. In this regard, whilst being “noisy”, this will be temporary and is necessary to ensure the function of the sirens as well as to ensure the wider public is familiar with the sound; and
    - during an emergency situation in which there is a threat to life and property, in which case the loud noise is a functional requirement of such a system in order to warn people of an emergency situation and the need to evacuate.
  - b. No sirens are to be located where they may affect known cultural and archaeological sites, and whilst they are located in and around the coast, as well as adjacent to Statutory Acknowledgement Areas, it is not anticipated that adverse effects on the values and significance of these areas will arise. Mana whenua have also not raised concerns with respect of the proposal.
  - c. A construction management plan and traffic management plan will ensure that the construction effects of installing the sirens is adequately managed.
  - d. The sirens are to be located next to, or in the immediate vicinity of existing infrastructure, such as public toilets, light and power poles and carpark areas, reducing any adverse effects on visual amenity of the area by ensuring all development is grouped together;
  - e. Where sirens are to be located in an outstanding landscape area, to ensure adverse effects on that visual amenity and character of the outstanding landscape, the monopoles of the sirens will be recessive in colour.
  - f. Whilst the sirens are all located in various natural hazard areas, it is not anticipated that the sirens will exacerbate the effect of the natural hazards.
  - g. The proposal will also result in positive effects in that it provides life saving infrastructure that provides advanced warning of an impending tsunami which poses a risk to property and life.
4. Overall, and on balance, accepting that there is a functional need for the sirens to be located in the localities they are proposed, due to there being residential development and being on the coast, as well as the functional need for the noise of the sirens to be as loud in order to warn of an emergency situation, it is considered that any adverse

effects are less than minor, and are outweighed by the positive effects and therefore are acceptable.

5. In regard to section 104(1)(ab) of the Act there are no offsetting or environmental compensation measures proposed or agreed to by the applicant for the activity, nor are any considered necessary.
6. In regard to section 104(1)(b) of the Act the following statutory documents are considered to be relevant to the application:
  - a. New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011,
  - b. Northland Regional Policy Statement 2016,
  - c. Operative Far North District Plan 2009, and
  - d. Proposed Far North District Plan.

The activity is consistent with these documents for the reasons set out in Section 10 of the Assessment of Environmental Effects submitted with the application.

#### *Operative Far North District Plan*

The activity is consistent with the relevant objectives, policies, and assessment criteria of the Operative District Plan because:

#### Chapter 7 Urban Environment

Siren 91 is proposed to be located in the Residential Zone. The outcomes expected from this zone are Residential areas containing a range of activities that are compatible, in terms of their effects, with the predominant residential use and character of those areas.

Whilst the proposed siren is not specifically provided for in the urban environment or residential zone, the policies and objectives seek to enable other [non-residential] activities where the effects are compatible with the effects of the residential activity. It is considered that the effects of the proposed sirens are compatible with those of the residential zone, in that the proposed sirens in a residential zone are located in close proximity to existing infrastructure including light and power poles, within a formed road corridor and adjacent to public infrastructure such as public toilets. It is also aids in mitigating the effects of residential development in coastal environments being susceptible to tsunami hazards, by way of proving an emergency warning in the event of a tsunami where there is a risk to life and property. The sirens are well separated from residential sites therefore not adversely impacting on the access to sunlight and daylight on those sites and have no impact on the privacy of any inhabitants of those sites.

It is considered the proposal is consistent with the objectives and policies set out in Chapter 7.

#### Chapter 9 Recreation and Conservation Environment

Sirens 62, 71, 76, 87 and 89 are proposed to be located in the Recreation or Conservation Zone. The outcomes expected from this zone are recreation and conservation areas are managed and used consistent with the reasons for which they were set aside or reserved.

The objectives and policies of Chapter 9 seek to protect recreational and conservation purposes of the zone, preserving high conservation values by managing the effects of activities so as not to compromise the recreation and conservation values of the zone.

The proposed sirens are not specifically or directly provided for in these zones, in that they are not ancillary to conservation or recreation activities. However, they are not considered to compromise the purpose of the zone, or impact on conservation or recreation activities, or detract from any values associated with such activities. The sirens are also not anticipated to compromise recreation and conservation activities and values within their respective locations. There is no vegetation removal required, and land disturbance within the zone will be minor and temporary during construction.

It is considered that the proposal is not contrary to the objectives and policies of Chapter 9, in that it does not compromise conservation nor recreation activities within the zone, nor does it limit the ability for such activities to be undertaken.

#### Chapter 10 General Coastal Zone

Siren 70 is located in the General Coastal Zone. The zone is generally rural with coastal influence and natural character attributes. The zone, in summary, seeks to preserve the natural character of the coastal environment, consolidate development in existing settled areas, recognise and provide for Māori and their relationship with the coastal environment and development occurs in a manner compatible with the amenity values of the coastal environment.

The proposed siren will be consolidated with existing development and land disturbance of the coastal environment will be minor with no vegetation clearance. The applicant has consulted with mana whenua who have not raised any concerns regarding the proposal. The siren will not detract from the amenity values of the coastal environment and will not hinder or restrict public access to the coastal environment, nor will it hinder or restrict access by tangata whenua to sites of significance or takutai moana. There is a functional need to site the siren in the coastal environment within natural hazard areas, particularly tsunami hazard area, however it is not expected that the siren would exacerbate the effects of natural hazards, such as coastal erosion and flooding.

It is considered the proposal is consistent with the Chapter 10 policies and objectives.

#### Chapter 12 Natural and Physical Resources

##### Section 1 – Landscape and Natural Features

Sirens 70 and 71 are proposed to be located in areas mapped as outstanding landscapes. It is considered that the sirens will not detract from the outstanding landscape. The sirens will be consolidated with existing development, thus not increasing the visual dominance of development within outstanding landscapes, and do not result in an impenetrable view over the outstanding landscape from public viewpoints. In these areas, the monopoles will be recessive in colour, mitigating the visual effects to an acceptable level within outstanding landscape areas. No vegetation removal will occur and land disturbance within the area will be minimal, as such not degrading the outstanding landscape, nor resulting in the deterioration of the outstanding landscape values. There is a functional need for the sirens in these locations, and as such, it is not considered that such development would be inappropriate in these locations. The siren infrastructure is modest in size, ensuring

that the infrastructure does not dominate or compromise the characteristics, values, and attributes of these landscapes.

It is therefore considered that the proposal is consistent with the objectives and policies of the landscape and natural features section of Chapter 12

#### Section 4 - Natural Hazards

All sirens are proposed, by virtue of their function, are located within areas subject to natural hazards, including flooding coastal hazards and tsunami hazards. Although only Sirens 70, 71 and 91 are located in mapped hazard overlays. The outcomes expected from the natural hazard chapter are reduced risk to life, property and the environment from natural hazards, the appropriate control of development in natural hazard areas and Increased public awareness of the risks of natural hazards and the role of natural features in natural hazard mitigation.

The proposed sirens reduce the threat to life and property from natural hazards, namely tsunami's, through providing forewarning of an emergency allowing for the evacuation of at risk areas. The testing of the sirens provides for education and improved public awareness of the risk of tsunami and of the sirens as well as what to do in the event of a tsunami. The erection of the sirens will not exacerbate natural hazards and there is a functional need for them to be located where they are. The proposal does not detract from natural character or features, such as dunes and wetlands that naturally reduce/mitigate the effects of natural hazards, nor does it impede on their ability to do so or alter their function.

It is considered the proposal is consistent with the natural hazards section of Chapter 12 objectives and policies.

#### **Conclusion of assessment of relevant policies and objectives of the ODP**

Whilst the ODP does not directly or specifically provide for tsunami sirens, particularly in the various relevant zones they are proposed to be located in, the sirens do not detract from, or prevent from occurring or achieving, the intent of the provisions of the relevant zones. It is considered that whilst the proposal may not be wholly consistent with the policies and objectives of the ODP, it is not contrary to them either. It is also considered that the proposal does not prevent the plan intentions from being achieved, and the sirens will not be offensive to the character and amenity, or the intent of the zones in which they are proposed to be located in.

#### *Proposed Far North District Plan*

No resource consents have been triggered<sup>1</sup> under the PDP, as such only a high level assessment against the Plan is included. The activity is consistent with the relevant objectives and policies of the Proposed District Plan because:

The proposal results in tsunami siren infrastructure being located within the Rural Production, Natural open space, Rural Lifestyle, Sport and Active Recreation, Settlement, Open Space, General Residential, and Rural Residential Zones. The proposal also interreacts with overlays that include the Coastal Environment, High Natural Character Areas, Coastal Flood Zone 1, 2 and 3, Notable Tree, River Flood

---

<sup>1</sup> Earthworks are a permitted activity as outlined in the s95 report

Hazard 10- and 100-year ARI Event, Treaty Settlement Area of Interest, and Statutory Acknowledgement Area.

Again, whilst the PDP does not directly or specifically provide for tsunami sirens, particularly in the various relevant zones they are proposed to be located in, the sirens do not detract from, or prevent from occurring or achieving, the intent of the provisions of the relevant zones. It is considered that whilst the proposal may not be wholly consistent with the policies and objectives of the PDP, it is not contrary to them either. It is also considered that the proposal does not prevent the plan intentions from being achieved, and the sirens will not be offensive to the character and amenity, or the intent of the zones in which they are proposed to be located in.

#### *Weighting of ODP v PDP*

For this resource consent application, the relevant provisions of both an operative and any proposed plan must be considered. Weighting is relevant if different outcomes arise from assessments of objectives and policies under both the operative and proposed plans.

The PDP has only been recently notified and as such there is potential for change as the plan goes through the statutory process. As no resource consents are triggered under the PDP, and as with the ODP, the PDP does not specifically provide for tsunami sirens, little weight is given to the provisions of the PDP.

#### *Regional Policy Statement for Northland*

The Regional Policy Statement (RPS) for Northland contains high level policy guidance for development within the region and is the vehicle for identifying and dealing with significant resource management issues.

Of particular relevance to this proposal are:

- Objective 3.7 and 3.8 seek to provide for significant infrastructure that will protect health and safety of the community and recognise the importance of the long-term infrastructure.
- Objective 3.13 recognises the risk and impacts of natural hazard events. 3.13(b), (e) and (g) are of particular relevance to this proposal as they enable appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be constructed and recognise that critical infrastructure may have to be located within hazard prone areas.
- Policies 7.1.2 and 7.1.3 which seeks to manage new development in flood and coastal hazard areas.

Overall, as set described in the assessment against the ODP, it is considered there is a functional need for the sirens to be located where they are proposed to be, and that this does not detract from the values associated with those areas, nor does it create conflict with existing or anticipated activities. The sirens provide for the health and safety of the wider public, as well as reducing risks from natural hazards and increasing awareness of natural hazards, namely tsunamis. The sirens do not restrict the ability to achieve desired and intended regional outcomes, nor do they impact on public access to conservation land, recreation land or the coast. They are all outside of known cultural and historical sites.

It is considered that the proposal is not contrary to the policies and objectives of the RPS, nor the outcomes sought.

*New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011*

The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS), contains objectives and policies which include those aimed at safeguarding the integrity, form, functioning and resilience of the coastal environment and sustaining its ecosystems, and preserving the natural character of the coastal environment.

Of particular relevance to this proposal the following objectives and policies:

- Objective 2 and Policy 13 seek to preserve the natural character, features, and landscape values of the coastal environment.
- Objective 4 and Policies 18 and 19 seek to maintain and enhance public open space within the coastal environment by ensuring public access to the coast is retained and provided for.
- Objective 6 recognises that the protection of the values of the coastal environment does not preclude use and development in appropriate places and forms within appropriate limits, and that functionally some uses and development can only be located on the coast or in the marine area.
- Policy 6(2)(c) further acknowledges that there are activities with a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area.
- Policies 24 and 25 seek to identify areas that are potentially to be affected by coastal hazards such as tsunamis and how to avoid or mitigate them.

The proposed sirens have a functional need to be located within or near the coastal environment, of which such activities are acknowledged by the NZCPS. As has been detailed previously in this report and the notification report, it is not anticipated the proposal would give rise to minor or minor visual effects and landscape and character effects. Where the sirens are to be located in outstanding landscapes, the visual effects are mitigated through the use of recessive colours and being clustered together with existing infrastructure. The sirens are located in areas affected by tsunami hazards and provides lifesaving infrastructure to mitigate the risks of such hazards. The proposal does not restrict or hinder public access to the coastal marine area, or known sites of cultural or historical importance.

Overall, it is considered that the proposal is consistent with the policies and objectives of the NZCPS.

7. In conclusion, it is considered that the proposal is not contrary to the relevant statutory documents, nor does it restrict or hinder the intentions and outcomes sought by these documents from being achieved. The proposed sirens are not offensive to the locations in which they are proposed to be erected, nor the policy direction of the relevant statutory documents.
8. In regard to section 104(1)(c) of the Act, the following other matters are relevant and reasonably necessary to determine the application:

*Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Plan (EMGP) 2021-2026*

The EMGP sets out the strategic direction of the Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group. The proposal is consistent with the objectives of the EMGP. One area of focus is to improve and maintain tsunami readiness and response and sets out actions which include ensuring that Northlands tsunami siren network meets the required national standards. The proposed replacements to the existing tsunami sirens will ensure that these standards are met.

*Precedent Effects*

With respect of Sirens 62, 71, 76, 87, 89 and 91, of which the application for resource consents is a non-complying activity, precedent effects are a relevant consideration.

The approval of the proposal will not undermine the integrity of the District Plan as the activity will produce only localised and minor effects, if any, and will not set an undesirable precedent, in that the provision of emergency warning systems has significant positive effects, that far outweigh the relatively minor (and in most cases) temporary adverse effects that arise from the sirens.

The proposal is considered to have unique features, in that it is for the provision of an emergency warning system, being a tsunami siren, that means despite the potential for other applications to be lodged, any precedent set will not result in the integrity of the plan being undermined. Furthermore, every resource consent application is assessed on a case by case basis.

9. In regard to section 104D of the Act and the application for Sirens 62, 71, 76, 87, 89 and 91, the proposal meets the “effects gateway”, as any adverse effects arising from this proposed activity will not be more than minor. Therefore, consent can be granted for this non-complying activity. For completeness, it is not considered that the proposal for sirens 62, 71, 76, 87, 89 and 91 would be contrary to the policies and objectives of the ODP. There is a functional need for the sirens to be located within the coastal or recreation activities zones, in spite of them not being ancillary to conservation or recreation activities, and to infringe the coastal marine area setback. There is also a functional need for Siren 91 to be located in a coastal hazard zone. These being the reasons for the non-complying activity status. The siting of siren 91 within the hazard area is not anticipated to exacerbate coastal hazards, nor increase their downstream effects on other property.
10. With respect to Siren 70, which is a Discretionary Activity, the adverse effects are anticipated to be less than minor, and the proposed sirens are not contrary to the policies and objectives of the relevant statutory documents.
11. Based on the assessment above the activity will be consistent with Part 2 of the Act.  
The activity will avoid, remedy, and/or mitigate any potential adverse effects on the environment while providing for the sustainable management of natural and physical resources and is therefore in keeping with the Purpose and Principles of the Act.

With respect to the matters under section 6:

- the proposed sirens do not result in the deterioration or degradation of the coastal environment;

- the requirement for sirens in areas identified as outstanding landscape to be recessive in colour ensures adverse visual effects on outstanding landscapes are less than minor and acceptable;
- the sirens do not obstruct, hinder or prevent public access to the coastal marine area, nor do they alter public access and as such public access to such areas are maintained;
- the proposed sirens will have less than minor, if any, effects on known cultural and archaeological sites;
- the proposed sirens assist in the management of significant risks from natural hazards, specifically tsunami hazards, by providing an emergency warning of an impending tsunami, allowing those at risk can evacuate and providing forewarning of a tsunami making landfall.

With respect to section 8, the activity is not considered to raise any issues in regard to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

12. Overall, for the reasons above it is appropriate for consent to be granted subject to the imposed conditions.

## Approval

This report has been prepared by Alex Erceg - Stellar Projects, Senior Planner. I have reviewed this and the associated information (including the application and electronic file material) and for the reasons and subject to the conditions above, and under delegated authority, grant this resource consent.



**Name: Pat Killalea**

Date: 19<sup>th</sup> April 2024

**Title: Independent Commissioner**



**DECISION ON LAND USE CONSENT APPLICATION  
UNDER THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991**

**Decision**

Pursuant to section 34(1) and sections 104, 104B and 104D and Part 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), the Far North District Council **grants** land use resource consent for a Non-Complying activity, subject to the conditions listed below, to:

**Applicant:** Northland Regional Council

**Council Reference:** 2240382-RMALUC

<b>Property Address:</b>	<b>Siren #</b>	<b>Address</b>	<b>Legal Description</b>
	63	13 Church Street, Russell	Lot 2 DP 339185
	64	1/3 Baffin Street, Opuā	Lot 5 DP 367224
	65	Corner Te Haumi Drive and Paihia Road	Lot 224 DP 79931
	66	3 School Road. Paihia	Lot 5 DP 57340
	69	1009 Purerua Road, Te Tii	
	78	140 Waterfront Drive, Mangonui	Allot 294 TN OF Mangonui
	99	Road Reserve (Windsor Landing Boat Ramp and Jetty Carpark, Kerikeri Inlet Road	Parcel ID: 5206214
	100	Road Reserve (Waipapa Landing Jetty, Landing Road)	Parcel ID: 5225070
	101	117 State Highway 1, Awanui	Allotment 53 Parish of Awanui and Lot 1 DP 178617

**The activities to which this decision relates are listed below:**

To install and operate Tsunami Sirens at various locations across the Far North District.

<b>Rule Number and Name</b>	<b>Non Compliance Aspect</b>	<b>Activity Status</b>
<b>Industrial Zone</b>		
7.8.5.1.6 Noise	Siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold. #Siren 64	Restricted Discretionary Activity
<b>Rural Living Zone</b>		
8.7.5.1.3 Building Height	Building greater than 9m. Proposed height of 9.8m. Siren #100	Restricted Discretionary Activity
8.7.5.1.7 Screening for Neighbours – Non-Residential Activities	No landscaping is proposed. Siren #100	Restricted Discretionary Activity
8.7.5.1.11 Noise	Siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold. Siren #100	Restricted Discretionary Activity
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	Siren will be approximately 17m from the CMA infringing the permitted setback of 30m by 13m. #Siren 100	Restricted Discretionary Activity
<b>Recreational Activities</b>		
9.6.5.1.1 Purpose of Buildings	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal recreational activities of the site and it cannot meet the RDA or DA standards. Sirens 66, 78 and 101.	Non-complying Activity
9.6.5.1.3 Building Height	Building greater than 8m. Proposed height of 9.1m. Sirens 66, 78 and 101.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
9.6.5.1.4 Sunlight	The siren cannot comply with the HIRB, and is setback 2.34m from the nearest boundary. Sirens 66, 78 and 101.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
9.6.5.1.6 Setback from Boundaries	Siren is 1.75m from the nearest boundary and cannot comply with the minimum setback of 2m. Siren #66	Restricted Discretionary Activity
9.6.5.1.9 Screening for Neighbours	No landscaping is proposed. Sirens 78 and 101.	Discretionary Activity.
9.6.5.1.12 Noise	Siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold. Sirens 66, 78 and 101.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
<b>Conservation Zone</b>		

9.7.5.1.1 Purpose of Buildings	The proposed siren is not directly for, or ancillary to, the principal conservation activities of the site in accordance with 9.7.5.1.1. Siren 65.	Non-complying activity
9.7.5.1.3 Building Height	Building greater than 8m. Proposed height of 9.123m. Siren 65.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
9.7.5.1.4 Sunlight	Siren is setback approximately 3m from the nearest boundary and therefore cannot comply. Siren 65.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
9.7.5.1.6 Screening from neighbours	No form of landscaping is proposed. Siren 65.	Discretionary activity.
9.7.5.1.8 Noise	Siren will infringe permitted noise threshold. Siren 65.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
<b>General Coastal Zone</b>		
10.6.5.1.4 Building Height	Building greater than 8m. Proposed height of 9.123m. Siren 69.	Discretionary Activity
10.6.5.1.10 Noise	Siren will infringe permitted noise threshold. Siren 69.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
<b>Coastal Living Zone</b>		
10.7.5.1.4 Building Height	Building greater than 8m. Proposed height of 9.1m. Siren 98.	Discretionary Activity
10.7.5.1.8 Screening for Neighbours Non-Residential Activities	No form of landscaping is proposed. Siren 98.	Discretionary Activity
10.7.1.12 Noise	Siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold. Siren 98.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
12.7.6.1.1 Setback from Lakes, Rivers and the Coastal Marine Area	The siren will be approximately 14m from the CMA, infringing the permitted setback of 30m by 16m. Siren 98.	Discretionary Activity
<b>Russell Township Zone</b>		
10.9.5.1.4 Building Height	Siren is proposed to be 9.1m high breaching the permitted height of 7.2m. Siren 63.	Discretionary Activity
10.9.5.1.6 Sunlight	Siren cannot comply with the HIRB and is setback 2.34m from the nearest boundary. Siren 63.	Restricted Discretionary Activity
10.9.5.1.13 Noise	Siren will infringe the permitted noise threshold. Siren 63.	Restricted Discretionary Activity

## Conditions

Pursuant to sections 108 of the Act, this consent is granted subject to the following conditions:

1. The activity shall be carried out in general accordance with the approved plans to this consent with the Councils “Approved Stamp” affixed to them.

Author	Project	Sheet/Drawing	Rev.	Dated
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/03	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/17	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/05	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/07	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/18	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/22	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231206/13	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/14	A	07/23
<b>Tutukaka Consultants Limited</b>	Northland Tsunami Siren Network	231203/36	A	07/23

## Earthworks

2. The consent holder shall ensure stormwater diversion and slit control measures are in place in accordance with the Erosion and Sediment Control Guide for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region (GD05) prior to the commencement of earthworks. Photographic evidence of ESP measures being in place are to be emailed to FNDC Team Leader Monitoring and Compliance at [RCmonitoring@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:RCmonitoring@fndc.govt.nz) referencing 2240382-RMALUC.

3. The consent holder shall ensure that all earthwork operations are carried out in a way that reduces the risk of slope instability and soil erosion. To reduce and/or minimize any slope failures, effective mitigation measures must be constructed as needed.

### **During Construction / Physical Works**

4. All construction works associated with the implementation of this resource consent shall only be carried out:
  - a. Monday to Friday – between the hours of 7:00am and 7:00pm
  - b. Saturday - between the hours of 7:30am and 6:00pm

No works shall be carried out on Sundays or public holidays.

5. The installation of the footings for the Tsunami Warning Sirens are to be checked and certified by a suitably qualified engineer with consideration given to its site-specific soil conditions (good ground) and its potential exposure to erosion/inundation where they are located within a NRC natural hazard zone.

*This applies specifically to the sites in river flood prone areas (sites 63, 64, 66 and 101) and for sites within a coastal flood zone (site 63, 64, 66, 99 and 100).*

### **During Operation**

6. The tsunami sirens may be tested twice a year at the turn of daylight savings. Each test shall be undertaken for a maximum duration of two minutes during the daytime. Testing of the sirens shall not occur at night.

*Advice note. This condition relates solely to the testing of Tsunami Sirens. In the event of an actual or potential tsunami threat, the siren can be activated at any time for any length of time necessary.*

## **Advice Notes**

### **Lapsing of Consent**

1. Pursuant to section 125 of the Act, this resource consent will lapse 5 years after the date of commencement of consent unless, before the consent lapses;
  - a) The consent is given effect to; or
  - b) An application is made to the Council to extend the period of consent, and the council decides to grant an extension after taking into account the statutory considerations, set out in section 125(1)(b) of the Act.

### **Right of Objection**

2. If you are dissatisfied with the decision or any part of it, you have the right (pursuant to section 357A of the Act) to object to the decision. The objection must be in writing, stating reasons for the objection and must be received by Council within 15 working days of the receipt of this decision.

### **Archaeological Sites**

3. Archaeological sites are protected pursuant to the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. It is an offence, pursuant to the Act, to modify, damage or destroy an archaeological site without an archaeological authority issued pursuant to that Act. Should

*any site be inadvertently uncovered, the procedure is that work should cease, with the Trust and local iwi consulted immediately. The New Zealand Police should also be consulted if the discovery includes koiwi (human remains). A copy of Heritage New Zealand's Archaeological Discovery Protocol (ADP) is attached for your information. This should be made available to all person(s) working on site.*

## **Reasons for the Decision**

1. By way of an earlier report that is contained within the electronic file of this consent, it was determined that pursuant to sections 95A and 95B of the Act the proposed activity will not have, and is not likely to have, adverse effects on the environment that are more than minor, there are also no affected persons and no special circumstances exist. Therefore, under delegated authority, it was determined that the application be processed without notification.
2. The application is for a Discretionary and Non-Complying activity resource consent as such under section 104 the Council can consider all relevant matters.
3. In regard to section 104(1)(a) of the Act the actual and potential effects of the proposal will be acceptable as:
  - a. Whilst the noise emitted from the sirens will exceed the thresholds for the relevant zones, the sirens will only sound on two occasions;
    - During bi-annual testing at the turn of daylight savings, in which testing will be undertaken during the day and for no more than two minutes. In this regard, whilst being 'noisy' this will be a temporary and is necessary to ensure the function of the sirens as well to ensure the wider public is familiar with the sound; and
    - During an emergency situation in which there is a threat to life and property, in which case the loud noise is a functional requirement of such a system in order to warn people of any emergency situation and the need to evacuate.
  - b. Access and traffic effects are less than minor as construction works will be short in duration and the safe operation of the roading network will be maintained during the works.
4. In regard to section 104(1)(ab) of the Act there are no offsetting or environmental compensation measures proposed or agreed to by the applicant for the activity.
5. In regard to section 104(1)(b) of the Act the following statutory documents are considered to be relevant to the application:
  - a. New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011,
  - b. Northland Regional Policy Statement 2016,
  - c. Operative Far North District Plan 2009,
  - d. Proposed Far North District Plan 2022

### *New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2011*

The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) sets out objectives and policies in order to achieve the purpose of the RMA in regards to the coastal environment of New Zealand. It is noted that the installation and construction of the 9 tsunami sirens around

the Far North District have a functional and operational need to be located within the coastal environment of which such activities are acknowledged by the NZPS. Of particular relevance to this application are the following objectives and policies:

- *Objective 2 and policy 13 which seek to preserve the natural character, features and landscape values of the coastal environment.*
- *Objective 4 and policies 18 and 19 seek to maintain and enhance public open space within the coastal environment by ensuring public access to the coast is retained and provided for.*
- *Objective 6 recognises that the protection of the values of the coastal environment does not preclude use and development in appropriate places and forms within appropriate limits, and that functionally some uses and development can only be located on the coast or in the marine area.*
- *Policy 692)(c) further acknowledges that there are activities with a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area.*
- *Policies 24 and 25 seek to identify areas that are potentially to be affected by coastal hazards such as tsunamis and how to avoid or mitigate them.*

As detailed in the notification report, the activity will not result in any adverse effects with regards to visual amenity, landscaping and character effects. Whilst all structures exceed the height limits with the coastal environment, when taking into account their dimensions of the sirens which are the largest component of the infrastructure, the effects on the wider environment are considered to be relatively modest. They will be visible but consistent with the overall built form of the wider environment. The sirens do not restrict public access in any way and the sirens are predominantly not identified as an outstanding feature or landscape. On this basis, it is considered that the activity is consistent with the objectives and policies of the NZCPS.

#### *Northland Regional Policy Statement*

With respect to the coastal environment, the Northland Regional Policy Statement (NRPS) contains objectives and policies which seek to protect and preserve the natural character of the coastal environment. Of particular relevance to this proposal are as follows:

- *Objective 3.7 and 3.8 seek to provide for significant infrastructure that will protect health and safety of the community and recognise the importance of the long-term infrastructure.*
- *Objective 3.13 recognises the risk and impacts of natural hazard events. 3.13(b), (e) and (g) are of particular relevance to this proposal as they enable appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be constructed and recognise that critical infrastructure that may have to be located within hazard prone areas.*
- *Policy 4.8 recognises that structures that have a functional need can be located within the coastal marine area and structures that will make a significant positive contribution to the local area of region.*

Naturally, to maximise the purpose of the sirens, these are located strategically across the district in order for the alert to reach the most people possible. The proposed sirens

are considered lifesaving infrastructure, designed to improve community resilience, readiness and response to the threat of tsunami risk. The sirens are relatively modest structures and are considered to be structurally resilient. On this basis, it is considered the sirens are consistent with the objectives and policies of the Northland RPS.

Far North District Operative District Plan (ODP)

Russell Township Zone

Objective: 10.9.3.1

Policies: 10.9.4.1, 10.9.4.7

Siren 63 will be viewed in the context of the wider of the low density residential area. Further the siren will provide for a functional and operational need to alert communities within the Russell Township of potential tsunami threat and hazards. The structure is relatively modest in terms of footprint and mass, are non-habitable and only involve minimal earthworks to establish the building platform. Consequently, the siren can achieve objective 10.9.3.1 and preserve the character of Russell Township (Policy 10.9.4.7). The notification report deemed effects of the installation and construction of the siren to be less than minor and of small scale, and as such is considered consistent with the existing development (Policy 10.9.4.1).

Industrial Zone

The Industrial zone includes the existing areas of industrial activity in the District and provides for the expansion of industry in these areas. By identifying a separate Industrial Zone, the Council is indicating that the effects of industrial activities are able to be managed most effectively if the activities that give rise to the effects are grouped together.

The proposed siren 64 infrastructure complies with all bulk and location controls of this zone with the exception of noise. The noise emissions generated by the sirens during an emergency event are considered lifesaving infrastructure, designed to improve community resilience, readiness and response to the threat of tsunami risk. On this basis, it is considered the siren is consistent with the objectives and policies of the Industrial Zone.

Conservation Zone

Objectives: 9.7.3.2, 9.7.3.3

Policies: 9.7.4.1, 9.7.4.2

Siren 65, as noted above has an important functional and operational need. The installation is a very small scale activity and will not have any adverse effects on the existing conservation area and will continue to be maintained and enhanced (Objective 9.7.3.2 and 9.7.3.3 and Policy 9.7.4.1). The siren will be constructed within an existing clearing at the edge of the vegetation and is clustered with existing FNDC infrastructure. The infrastructure will not result in domination, loss of privacy or overshadowing on neighbouring lots (Policy 9.7.4.2). Siren 65 is considered consistent in achieving the objectives and policies of the Conservation Zone.

Recreational Activities Zone

Objective: 9.6.3.2



#### Policies: 9.6.4.1

Sirens 65 and 101 are located within the Recreational Activities Zone. The siren infrastructure is small in scale and any effects are considered to be less than minor and compatible with the surrounding environment (Objective 9.6.3.2). The siren will be viewed in context with the wider environment and will be similar to other street infrastructure such as light poles. While the infrastructure is not directly provided for, thus, not directly ancillary to the purpose of the zone, the sirens are not considered to compromise the purpose of the zone and more specifically the areas of location (Policy 9.6.4.1). The sirens are considered to achieve the objectives and policies of the Recreational Activities zone.

#### General Coastal Zone and Coastal Living Zone

Siren 69 is proposed within the General Coastal Zone and sirens 98 and 99 are proposed within the Coastal Living Zone. The proposed siren infrastructure is considered to be relatively modest in scale and sized. The installation involves minor land disturbance that will be appropriately managed and temporary. With regards to landscape and visual amenity, the sirens are considered to be acceptable in this location, as the infrastructure will be clustered with existing public facilities so as to contain the visual impacts of the activity within an already modified environment.

Overall, the siren infrastructure is considered to be consistent with intent of the two zones.

#### Rural Living Zone

The objectives and policies of the zone seek to provide for a wide range of activities, while managing the effects of activities that are incompatible with the rural living zone. The proposed siren infrastructure is not considered to be incompatible, as it does not restrict existing activities or generate reverse sensitivity effects that may limit the purpose of the zone.

It is therefore, considered to be consistent with the objectives and policies of this zone.

#### Proposed District Plan

The activity is consistent with the objectives and policies of the Proposed District Plan. Notably, Siren 63 and 66 trigger reasons for consent under the PDP within Kororareka Russell Township and Open Space. Similarly as the ODP, the activity will remain consistent with the objectives and policies of the two zones.

For this resource consent application the relevant provisions of both an operative and any proposed plan must be considered. Weighting is relevant if different outcomes arise from assessments of objectives and policies under both the operative and proposed plans.

As the outcomes sought are the same under the operative and the proposed plan frameworks, no weighting is necessary.

6. In regard to section 104(1)(c) of the Act there are no other matters relevant and reasonably necessary to determine the application:

## *Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Plan (EMGP) 2021-2026*

The EMGP sets out the strategic direction of the Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group. The proposal is consistent with the objectives of the EMGP. One area of focus is to improve and maintain tsunami readiness and response and sets out actions which include ensuring that Northlands tsunami siren network meets the required national standards. The proposed replacements to the existing tsunami sirens will ensure that these standards are met.

### Precedent Effects

The approval of the proposal will not undermine the integrity of the District Plan as the activity will produce only localised and minor effects, if any, and will not set an undesirable precedent, in that the provision of emergency warning systems has significant positive effects, that far outweigh the relatively minor (and in most cases) temporary adverse effects that arise from the sirens.

The proposal is considered to have unique features, in that it is for the provision of an emergency warning system, being a tsunami siren, that means despite the potential for other applications to be lodged, any precedent set will not result in the integrity of the plan being undermined. Furthermore, every resource consent application is assessed on a case by case basis.

7. In regard to section 104D of the Act the activity meets both tests as any adverse effects arising from this proposed activity will not be more than minor, and the activity will not be contrary to the objectives and policies of the Operative District Plan. Therefore, consent can be granted for this non-complying activity.
8. Based on the assessment above the activity will be consistent with Part 2 of the Act.  

The activity will avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential adverse effects on the environment while providing for the sustainable management of natural and physical resources and is therefore in keeping with the Purpose and Principles of the Act. There are no matters under section 6 that are relevant to the application. The proposal is an efficient use and development of the site that will maintain existing amenity values without compromising the quality of the environment. The activity is not considered to raise any issues in regard to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.
9. Overall, for the reasons above it is appropriate for consent to be granted subject to the imposed conditions.

## **Approval**

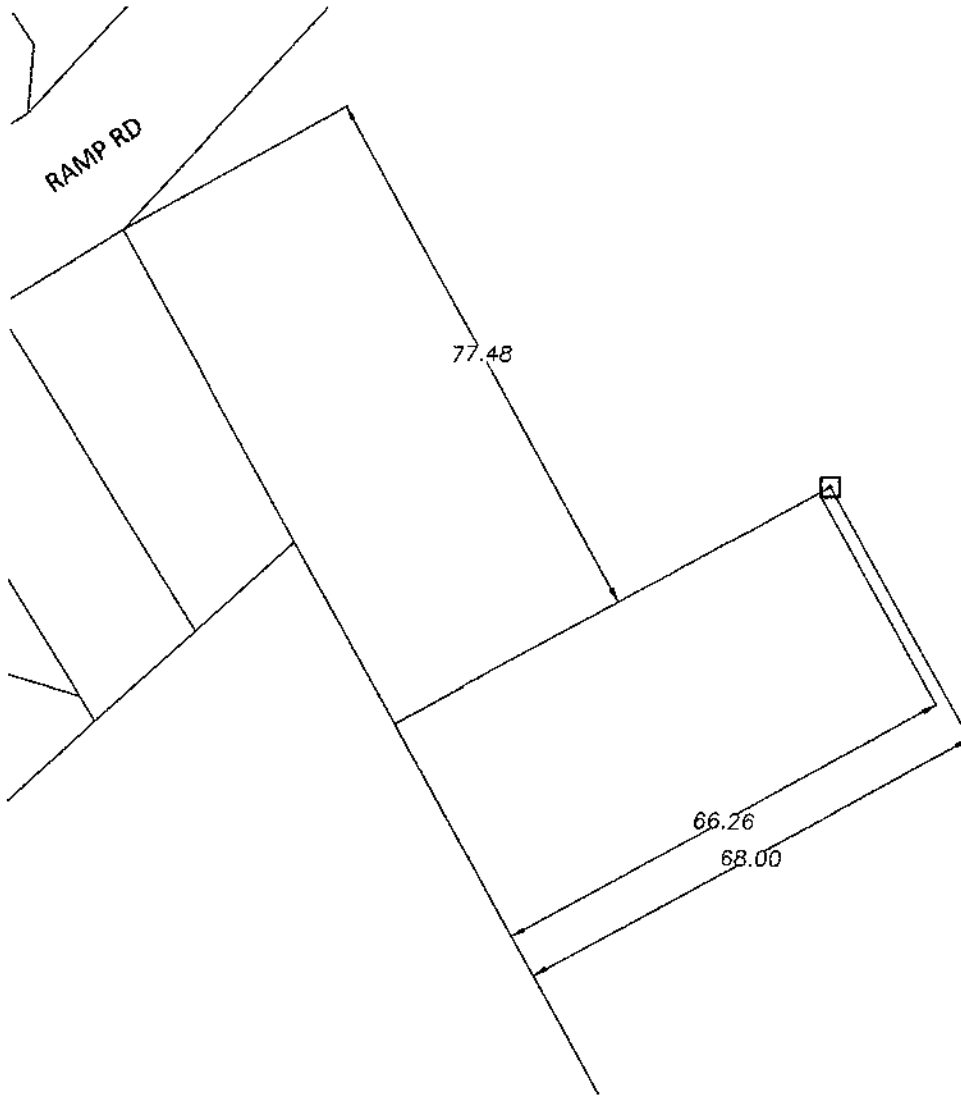
This resource consent has been prepared by Salamasina Brown, Intermediate Planner. I have reviewed this and the associated information (including the application and electronic file material) and for the reasons and subject to the conditions above, and under delegated authority, grant this resource consent.

*P. G. Killalea*

**Name: Pat Killalea**

Date: 10<sup>th</sup> May 2024

**Title: Independent Commissioner**



**NOTE:**

FOUNDATION PAD PLAN SIZE 2.5m BY 2.5m

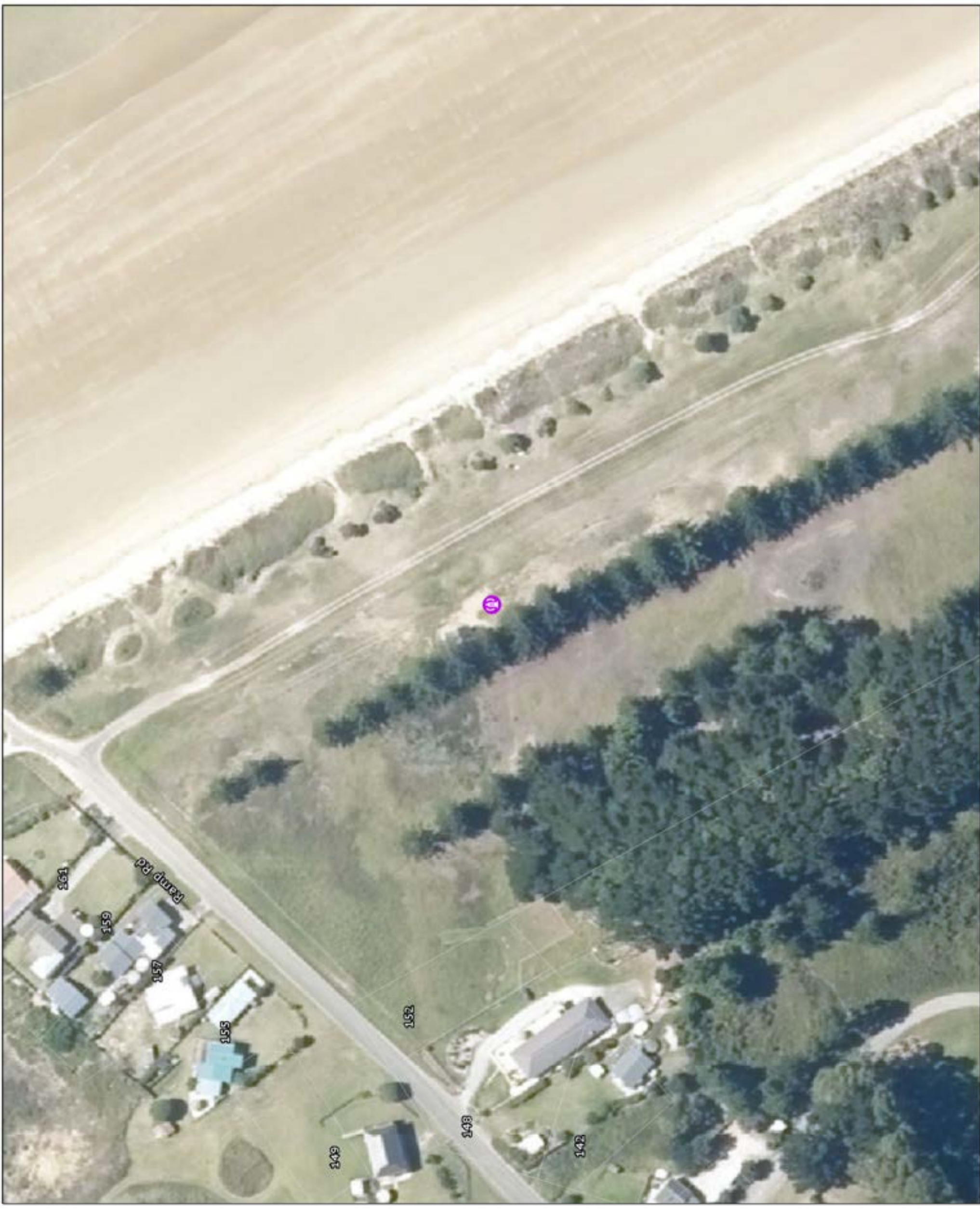
**OVERALL HEIGHTS:**

TWS-293 SIREN MODULE 9.123m

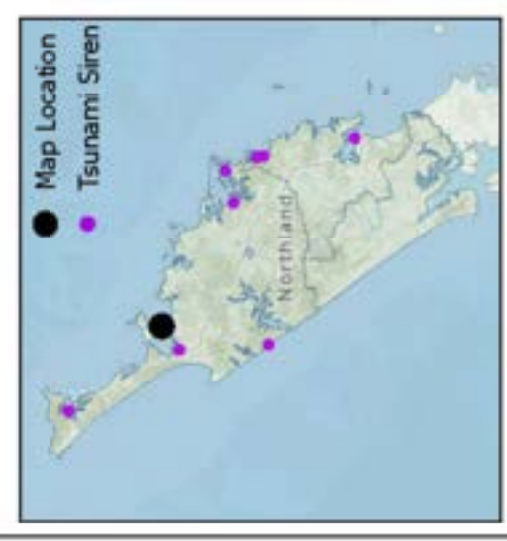
TWS-295 SIREN MODULE 9.758M

**SITE NO 80 - SIREN TYPE TWS-295  
 OPPOSITE 163 RAMP RD, LAKE OHIA  
 GEOLOCATION -34.944873N, 173.383711E**

<b>TUTUKAKA CONSULTANTS LIMITED</b> Consulting Engineers 50 Taonga Lane, Tutukaka Whangarei 0173 Phone (09) 434 3594, 0221 890 870 E-mail: wayne@tutukakaco.com	client: <b>NORTHLAND REGIONAL COUNCIL</b>	location: <b>WHANGAREI DISTRICT</b>
	project: <b>NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN NETWORK</b>	drawing title: <b>RESOURCE CONSENT STAGE 1 - SEPARABLE PORTION 1</b>
<b>Northland</b> <b>REGIONAL COUNCIL</b> Te Kaitiaki a-rohe o Te Tai Tokerau	SCALES: 1:1000  FILE: SIREN LOC - WHANG DATE: 03/23 ORIGINAL SIZE: A4	REVISIONS A ISSUE FOR CLIENT APPROVAL B NEW LOCATION LABEL CORRECTED 16-8-24
	DRAWING NUMBER <b>231202/02</b>  REVISION: B	



**Tsunami Siren # 80**  
**Siren Type: 295**  
**Location: Opposite 163 Ramp Road, Lake Ohia**  
**GPS: -34.944837, 173.383711**  
**Property Owner: Far North District Council**  
**Parcel ID: 6851424**  
**Legal Desc: Part Section 26 Blk V Rangaunu SD**  
**Title:**



Data sources: Eagle Technology, Land Information New Zealand and Northland Regional Council



**Tsunami Siren # 80 - Ramp Road**

# **NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIRENS ROLLOUT**

## **Ramp Road, Tokerau Beach (#80)**

### **Landscape assessment**

5 September 2024  
24052\_01

*FINAL*





# Document Quality Assurance

---

**Bibliographic reference for citation:**

Simon Cocker Landscape Architecture Limited. 2024. NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIRENS ROLLOUT, Ramp Road, Tokerau Beach (#80) – *Landscape assessment*.

Prepared by	Simon Cocker Landscape Architect Principal SCLA	
Reviewed by	Simon Cocker Landscape Architect Principal SCLA	
Ref.	24052_01	
Status. [FINAL]	Revision / version -	Issue Date: 5 September 2023

**Use and Reliance**

This report has been prepared by Simon Cocker Landscape Architecture Limited (SCLA) on the specific instructions of our Client. It is solely for our Client's use for the purpose for which it is intended in accordance with the agreed scope of work. SCLA does not accept any liability or responsibility in relation to the use of this report contrary to the above, or to any person other than the Client. Any use or reliance by a third party is at that party's own risk. Where information has been supplied by the Client or obtained from other external sources, it has been assumed that it is accurate, without independent verification, unless otherwise indicated. No liability or responsibility is accepted by SCLA for any errors or omissions to the extent that they arise from inaccurate information provided by the Client or any external source.

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1.0</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2.0</b>	<b>THE PROPOSAL</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3.0</b>	<b>EXISTING ENVIRONMENT</b>	<b>4</b>
3.1	The Site Context:	4
3.2	Statutory Matters	7
3.3	Visual catchment	13
<b>4.0</b>	<b>IDENTIFIED LANDSCAPE VALUES</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>5.0</b>	<b>ASSESSMENT OF LANDSCAPE EFFECTS</b>	<b>14</b>
5.1	Biophysical – Abiotic attributes	15
5.2	Biophysical – Biotic attributes	15
5.3	Experiential attributes	15
5.4	Social, cultural and associative attributes	16
5.5	Summary of landscape effects	16
<b>6.0</b>	<b>ASSESSMENT OF NATURAL CHARACTER EFFECTS</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>7.0</b>	<b>ASSESSMENT AGAINST THE STATUTORY PROVISIONS</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>8.0</b>	<b>CONCLUSION</b>	<b>18</b>
APPENDIX 1	Figures	18
APPENDIX 2	Landscape and visual effects assessment methodology	-



# 1.0 INTRODUCTION

Simon Cocker Landscape Architecture has been engaged by the B&A to prepare a landscape assessment on behalf of the applicant (Northland Regional Council). Northland Regional Council (NRC) is coordinating the rollout of new tsunami sirens across Te Taitokerau Northland.

Currently, there are 205 sirens located throughout Te Taitokerau that do not meet the National Emergency Management Agency (NEMA) standards, the sirens do not meet frequency or messaging requirements and as such need replacing. 95 new sirens are proposed to replace the old sirens across Te Taitokerau which all have better coverage and will meet NEMA standards.

Siren #80 is proposed at Ramp Road, Tokerau Beach (refer to [Figure 1](#) in [Appendix 1](#)).

This assessment will describe the proposal, describe the existing environment and provide an analysis of the landscape and its values. It will assess landscape (including natural character and visual amenity) effects of the proposed activity.

Siren 80 is located within the Conservation Zone, Outstanding Landscape and Coastal Hazard 2 under the Operative Far North Plan and in the Natural Open Space and Coastal Environment under the Proposed District Plan.

It is my understanding that consent is required as a Restricted Discretionary activity for the following infringements:

- 9.7.5.2.2 Building Height;
- 9.7.5.1.8 Noise;
- 12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities within Outstanding Landscapes.

## Assessment methodology

The assessment has been prepared by a Registered Landscape Architect with reference to the Te Tangi a Te Manu (Aotearoa New Zealand Landscape Guidelines)<sup>1</sup>. The assessment methodology is detailed in [Appendix 2](#). In addition, this report has been prepared in accordance with the NZILA (New Zealand Institute of Landscape Architects) Code of Conduct<sup>2</sup>.

## Effects Ratings and Definitions

The significance of effects identified in this assessment are based on a seven-point scale which includes very low; low; moderate-low; moderate, moderate-high, high, and very high. For the purpose of this assessment, low-moderate equates to minor in RMA terminology.

## Desktop study and site visits

- Northland Regional Policy Statement (2016);
- The Operative Far North District Plan;
- Plan titled 'Northland Tsunami Siren #80 – Ramp Road, prepared by Specialize. dated 20 June 2023;
- B&A. Northland Tsunami Siren Rollout. Land Use Consent. AEE and Statutory analysis. 31 July 2023;
- Te Ara website<sup>3</sup> -
- GNS Science Geology Web Map Client;

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://nzila.co.nz/media/uploads/2022\\_09/Te\\_Tangi\\_a\\_te\\_Manu\\_Version\\_01\\_2022\\_.pdf](https://nzila.co.nz/media/uploads/2022_09/Te_Tangi_a_te_Manu_Version_01_2022_.pdf)

<sup>2</sup> Contained in Appendix 1 of: [http://www.nzila.co.nz/media/50906/registered\\_membership\\_guide\\_final.pdf](http://www.nzila.co.nz/media/50906/registered_membership_guide_final.pdf)

<sup>3</sup> <https://teara.govt.nz/en/muriwhenua-tribes/print#:~:text=to%20lie%20down.,Ngāti%20Kahu,captain%20of%20the%20Tinana%20canoe.> And <https://teara.govt.nz/en/northland-places/print#>

- Aerial photography, Far North District Council GIS mapping, and Google Earth.

A visit was undertaken on the late afternoon of 28 October 2023. The weather conditions during the visit were bright with sunny intervals and light to moderate winds.

## 2.0 THE PROPOSAL

The proposal is described in the AEE and illustrated on [Figures 2a and 2b](#).

The sirens will be the TWS-295 structure, mounted on an 9.75m height mast (refer to [Figure 2a](#)).

Foundation: The siren mast/pole will be set within a precast concrete foundation that is 2.5m x 2.5m in area.

Finish colour: The proposed structure will be finished with 'Resene Abbey cc' coded as B45-009-231, this colour has a Light Reflectance Value of approximately 15%.

Earthworks: Earthworks will be required for of a volume of 3.5m<sup>3</sup> over 6.5m<sup>2</sup>.

The existing trees in the vicinity of the Site will be retained unaffected.

The estimated construction timeframe for each siren is 10 days, including to form the platform, install the concrete block foundation, install the mast, mount the siren, and connect the power supply.

## 3.0 EXISTING ENVIRONMENT

### 3.1 The site context

The proposed monopole design is shown in [Figure 2a](#), and identified location for the proposed structure is shown on [Figure 2b and 3](#). It is situated within an area of reserve between the low sand dune ridge which defines the back edge of the beach, and a row of mature Norfolk Island Pine trees (refer to [photos 1, 2 and 3](#)).

The long, linear and undulating space defined by the low dune ridge, and the trees is used for parking and recreating, and affords access to the beach. It accommodates a toilet block (adjacent to the proposed Site), and scattered picnic tables, and is accessed from the eastern end of Ramp Road.

Ramp Road terminates at a slipway which provides access to the beach, and its northern edge at this eastern end is lined with a number of residences (refer to [photos 4, 5 and 6](#)). Properties at the eastern end – being #163, and #161 (refer to [Figure 3](#)), offer views to the south east, across Ramp Road to the subject Site, separated from these dwellings by some 100 – 120m. Views from #159 and #157 are largely screened by the row of trees (refer to [photos 1 and 7](#)).

To the south of the aforementioned linear reserve area is an area identified for freedom campervan parking which is accessed via a track which diverges from Ramp Road approximately 250m from its eastern end. The track meanders through the relic dune land landscape and offers views toward the subject Site (refer to [photo 8](#)).

[Plate 1](#) below shows the extent of Department of Conservation Protected Natural Areas (outlined in purple), and Public Conservation land (indicated with a green or blue 'wash').



*Plate 1. DoC Conservation land and protected natural areas (Tokerau Beach, Duneland, and Lake Ohia, Wetland. To the north of Ramp Road is the Southern Tokerau Swamp, Wetland)*

The coastal landscape is identified, in the Far North District Landscape Assessment as being within the Expansive Exposed Beaches category, and specifically within the Tokerau Beach unit (Unit C31). The category is described as being characterised by its expansive sweeping beach, and the sense of exposure (refer to [photo 9](#)), but with containment on the inland side being afforded by dune lands, or in some cases, pine plantations.

The FNLA notes the detracting influence resulting from inappropriate residential development partially with the Tokerau Beach settlement (Unit T34). The assessment notes the following aspects that contribute to the character of the unit, being;

- The sense of expansive spaciousness experienced in the units;
- The limited extent of built development found within the units;
- A largely 'natural' sequence of coastal dunefield/ wetland vegetation, whilst acknowledging that exotic species of sand binding plants often contribute to the matrix of vegetation;
- The association between the sweeping beach and the field of dunes found extending inland as a backdrop.

The above aspects are a general summary of aspects found in the category as a whole. Within the vicinity of the subject Site, the strength of these aspects is moderated by modification of the dune land landscape through earthworks and landuse (settlement and the use of the reserve for campervan parking), and exotic vegetation – being the Norfolk Island Pines and exotic species on the low dune crest (such as ice plant and Gazania).

Inland from Unit T31, and to the south and south west, the landscape assumes a different character which is not influenced by the coast and ocean. This is described as the Gently undulating pasture / scrub category, and specifically the Scrubland at Foot of Karikari Peninsula Unit (Unit T50).

Described in the assessment as being typified by a range of topographies from a subtle undulating terrain, to the more dramatically rolling country that characterises ancient dune lands. The vegetation is also described as variable, including dense manuka shrublands through to open pasture. As is illustrated by photo 10, the landscape of the area to the south and inland of the Site comprises mānuka shrubland with wetland associations and this imparts a powerfully simple theme.

This area was clothed with dense Kauri Forest some 30,000 years ago which was killed off by natural processes. Subsequently the area became an ephemeral lake (dry in summer but water-filled in the winter), and was dug over for kauri gum by hundreds of workers in the late 19th Century when gum (fossilised resin) was valued highly for making varnish.

The landscape elements that characterise these landscapes includes:

- A simple and graphic landscape image;
- Predominant cover with indigenous shrubland, thereby conveying a strong 'native' signature;
- Extremely limited built development, and;
- An underlying commentary on the heritage of the area (gumlands)



Plate 2. Geology

The underlying geology (refer to [Plate 2](#) above), reflects the landscape character described above, with the Site and the coastal strip being underlain by windblown sand, or dune deposits, and the undulating inland landscape being underlain by river and swamp deposits.

Karikari is a traditional homeland for Ngāti Kahu. One of their marae , Haiti-Tai-Marangai, is located to the north of the Site at Whatuwhiwhi. The tribe takes its name from Kahutianui-o-te-rangi, the daughter of Tūmoana. Tūmoana was captain of the *Tinana* canoe. He returned to Hawaiki where his nephew Te Parata renamed the canoe *Māmaru*.

The *Māmaru* returned to Muriwhenua territory, first sighting land at Pūwheke mountain. Te Parata married Kahutianui-o-te-rangi, and their descendants settled the Rangaunu and Tokerau harbours. They spread south to Whangaroa Harbour, Matauri Bay and Te Tī, where they intermarried with the descendants of Puhi, the captain of the *Mataatua* canoe.

In 1769 James Cook sailed along the coast and noted briskly that this stretch was, "doubtless a bay". At the same time, the French ship of Jean François Marie de Surville was anchored in the bay, and each ship was unaware of the other. In December 1769 the bay was the site of violence between Māori and de Surville. His vessel, the *St Jean Baptiste*, lost three anchors off the peninsula.

Beyond the visual and physical manifestations of the Karikari landscape, the peninsula has long been regarded as a place that Northlanders, Aucklanders and their families can escape to on weekends and at holidays.

Tokerau Beach is a place of many moods. It can be bright and suffused with colours that are deeply saturated on a hot summer's day, whilst other times, it can be bleak, rain lashed and turbulent – with surf that is grey and wind-whipped amid a wider landscape that is largely bleached of its colour. Although the subject Site – being proximate to a cluster of settlement, and within an informal car park – is not a place that is imbued with feelings of remoteness, a walk along the beach to the north or south takes the visitor to a coastal landscape that is pervaded with a greater sense of isolation.

## 3.2 Statutory Matters

### Northland Regional Policy Statement (2016)

The RPS identifies the coastal environment and a number of High and Outstanding Natural Character Areas within the vicinity of the Site. The Site is within the Coastal Environment, and whilst bounded by Outstanding or High Natural Character Areas, it is not overlain these areas. In addition, there are no Outstanding Natural Landscapes or Features overlaying the Site. These areas are shown on Plate 3 below.

The most relevant Objective for this application is Objective 3.14.

*Identify and protect from inappropriate subdivision, use and development;*

- (a) *The qualities and characteristics that make up the natural character of the coastal environment, and the natural character of freshwater bodies and their margins;*
- (b) *.....;*
- (c) *.....*

The RPS also introduces a number of policies which aim to bring the RPS in line with the NZCPS under Part 4 of the RPS. Section 4.6.1 outlines the policy relevant to managing effects on natural character, features / landscapes and heritage.

Whilst noting that the site is not within an area overlain by either an Outstanding Natural Landscape, or an Outstanding Natural Feature, the following provisions are of relevance:



Plate 3: Extract from RPS GIS maps

**(1) In the coastal environment:**

- (a) Avoid adverse effects of subdivision use, and development on the characteristic and qualities which make up the outstanding natural features and outstanding natural landscapes.*
- (b) Where (a) does not apply, avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects of subdivision, use and development on natural character, natural features and natural landscapes. Methods which may achieve this include:
 
  - (i) Ensuring the location, intensity, scape and form of subdivision and built development in appropriate having regard to natural elements, landforms and processes, including vegetation patterns, ridgelines, headlands, peninsulas, dune systems, reefs and freshwater bodies and their margins; and*
  - (ii) In areas of high natural character, minimising to the extent practicable indigenous vegetation clearance and modification (including earthworks / disturbance, structures, discharges and extraction of water) to natural wetlands, the beds of lakes, rivers and the coastal marine area and their margins; and*
  - (iii) Encouraging any new subdivision and built development to consolidate within and around existing settlements or where natural character and landscape has already been compromised.**

*When considering whether there are any adverse effects on the characteristics and qualities of the natural character, natural features and landscape values in terms of (1)(a), whether there are any significant adverse effects and the scale of any adverse effects in terms of (1)(b) and (2), and in determining the character, intensity and scale of the adverse effects:*

- a) Recognise that a minor or transitory effect may not be an adverse effect;*
- b) Recognise that many areas contain ongoing use and development that:*

- (i) Were present when the area was identified as high or outstanding or have subsequently been lawfully established
- (ii) May be dynamic, diverse or seasonal;
- c) Recognise that there may be more than minor cumulative adverse effects from minor or transitory adverse effects; and

Have regard to any restoration and enhancement on the characteristics and qualities of that area of natural character, natural features and/or natural landscape.

**Operative Far North District Plan**

As noted previously, It is my understanding that consent is required as a Restricted Discretionary activity under the Operative Far North District Plan, and is located within the Conservation Zone. The description for this zone states:

*A large part of the area of the District has been set aside or reserved for recreation and conservation purposes. This reflects not only the need and opportunities for recreation in the District, but also the need for protection of areas of high conservation value, including indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna.*

*..... Most of the land that is included is esplanade reserves, public land administered by the Department of Conservation or land owned by the Council. Management of this land must reflect the reasons for its protection or reservation, and the aspirations of the community. In some cases, appropriate management will include development of public facilities and structures. In other cases, the need to conserve the physical environment will dictate that little development occurs.*

Within the Proposed Plan, the Site is overlain by the Coastal Environment and by an Outstanding Landscape (refer to Plate 4).

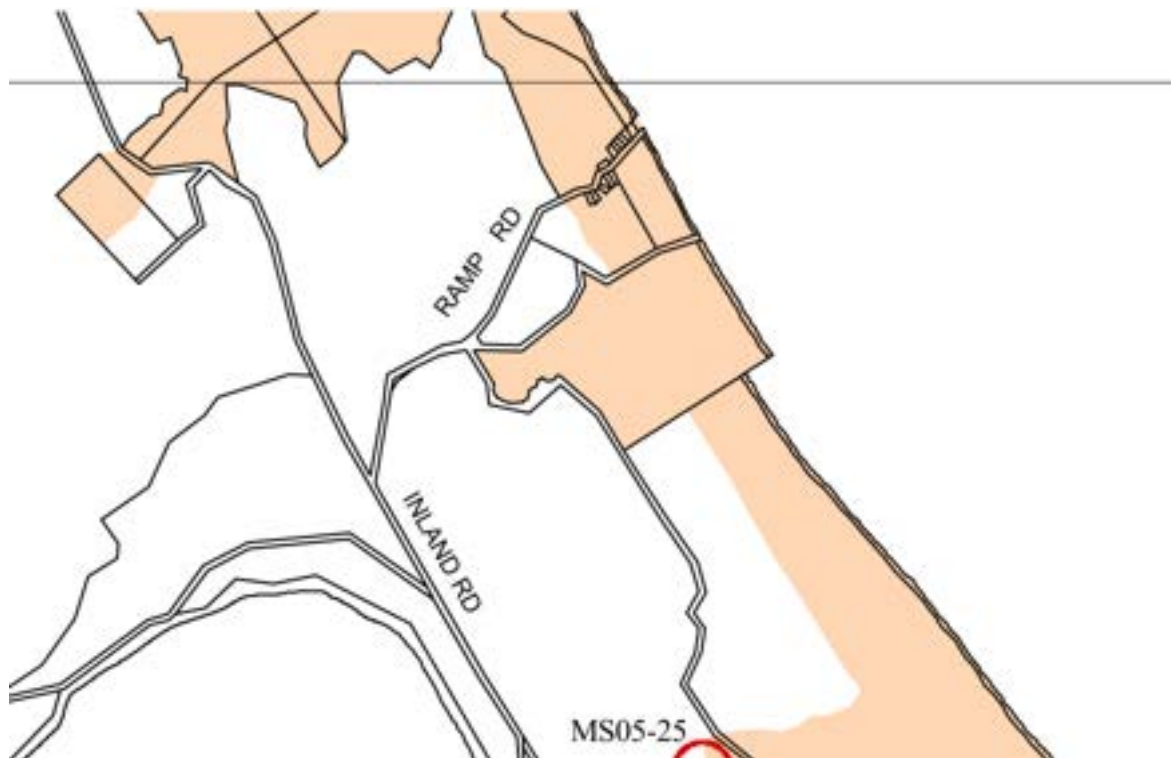


Plate 4. Extract from Operative District Plan Resource map

It is my understanding that the proposed structure will require consent as a Restricted Discretionary activity, with the following discretionary infringements:

- 9.7.5.2.2 Building Height;
- 9.7.5.1.8 Noise;
- 12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities within Outstanding Landscapes..

For guidance, the matters for discretion listed in 9.6.5.2.2 and 9.6.5.2.5, are referred to. These are as follows:

- (a) *the extent to which adjacent properties will be adversely affected in terms of visual domination, overshadowing, loss of privacy and loss of access to sunlight and daylight;*
  - (b) *the ability to mitigate any adverse effects by way of increased separation distances between buildings or the provision of landscaping and screening;*
  - (c) *the extent of the building area and the scale of the building and the extent to which they are compatible with both the built and natural environments in the vicinity.*
- (a) *the extent to which adjacent properties will be adversely affected in terms of visual domination, overshadowing, loss of privacy and loss of access to sunlight and daylight;*
  - (b) *the location and proximity of adjacent residential units, and the outdoor space used by those units;*
  - (c) *the ability to mitigate any adverse effects of loss of sunlight.*

The objectives and policies of relevance are as follows”:

#### 9.3.1

*To protect recreation and conservation areas for the purposes for which they have been set aside or reserved.*

#### 9.3.2

*To identify and preserve areas that have high conservation value.*

#### 9.4.1

*That existing recreation and conservation areas be managed so as to ensure that the effects of activities remain similar to the existing situation or enhanced.*

#### 9.4.2

*That areas identified as having a high priority for protection for conservation purposes and which are included in the Conservation or Recreational Activities Zone are managed so that the effects of activities in those areas do not compromise conservation values.*

#### 9.4.3

*That the effects of recreational activities, especially where these cross the land/water interface, are managed by the regulatory authorities in an integrated way.*

#### 9.4.4

*That the effects of activities in the vicinity of recreation and conservation areas are managed so that recreation and conservation areas are not compromised.*



The objectives and policies from the Coastal Environment chapter that are of relevance are as follows:

#### 10.3.1

*To manage coastal areas in a manner that avoids adverse effects from subdivision, use and development. Where it is not practicable to avoid adverse effects from subdivision use or development, but it is appropriate for the development to proceed, adverse effects of subdivision use or development should be remedied or mitigated.*

#### 10.3.4

*To preserve and, where appropriate in relation to other objectives, to restore, rehabilitate protect, or enhance:*

- a. the natural character of the coastline and coastal environment;*
- b. areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;*
- c. outstanding landscapes and natural features;*
- d. the open space and amenity values of the coastal environment;*
- e. water quality and soil conservation (insofar as it is within the jurisdiction of the Council).*
- f. To maintain and enhance public access to and along the coast whilst ensuring that such access does not adversely affect the natural and physical resources of the coastal environment, including Maori cultural values, and public health and safety.*
- g. To secure future public access to and along the coast, lakes and rivers (including access for Maori) through the development process and specifically in accordance with the Esplanade Priority Areas mapped in the District Plan.*
- h. To minimise adverse effects from activities in the coastal environment that cross the coastal marine area boundary.*

That the Council only allows appropriate subdivision, use and development in the coastal environment. Appropriate subdivision, use and development is that where the activity generally:

#### 10.4.1

- (a) recognises and provides for those features and elements that contribute to the natural character of an area that may require preservation, restoration or enhancement; and*
- (b) is in a location and of a scale and design that minimises adverse effects on the natural character of the coastal environment; and*
- (c) has adequate services provided in a manner that minimises adverse effects on the coastal environment and does not adversely affect the safety and efficiency of the roading network; and*
- (d) avoids, as far as is practicable, adverse effects which are more than minor on heritage features, outstanding landscapes, cultural values, significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, amenity values of public land and waters and the natural functions and systems of the coastal environment; and*
- (e) promotes the protection, and where appropriate restoration and enhancement, of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna; and*
- (f) recognises and provides for the relationship of Maori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, waahi tapu and other taonga; and*
- (g) where appropriate, provides for and, where possible, enhances public access to and along the coastal marine area; and*
- (h) gives effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement and the Regional Policy Statement for Northland.*

#### 10.4.2

*That sprawling or sporadic subdivision and development in the coastal environment be avoided through the consolidation of subdivision and development as far as practicable, within or adjoining built up areas, to the extent that this is consistent with the other objectives and policies of the Plan.*

#### 10.4.3

*That the ecological values of significant coastal indigenous vegetation and significant habitats are maintained in any subdivision, use or development in the coastal environment.*

#### 10.4.4

*That public access to and along the coast be provided, where it is compatible with the preservation of the natural character and amenity, cultural, heritage and spiritual values of the coastal environment, and avoids adverse effects in erosion prone areas.*

#### 10.4.12

*That the adverse effects of development on the natural character and amenity values of the coastal environment will be minimised through:*

- (a) the siting of buildings relative to the skyline, ridges, headlands and natural features;*
- (b) the number of buildings and intensity of development;*
- (c) the colour and reflectivity of buildings;*
- (d) the landscaping (including planting) of the site;*
- (e) the location and design of vehicle access, manoeuvring and parking areas.*

As noted previously, the Site is overlain by and Outstanding Landscape in the Operative District Plan. Objectives and policies contained in chapter 12 of relevance are as follows:

*12.1.3.1 To protect outstanding landscapes and natural features from inappropriate, subdivision use and development.*

*12.1.3.2 To protect the scientific and amenity values of outstanding natural features.*

*12.1.3.3 To recognise and provide for the distinctiveness, natural diversity and complexity of landscapes as far as practicable including the complexity found locally within landscapes and the diversity of landscapes across the District.*

*12.1.3.4 To avoid adverse effects and to encourage positive effects resulting from land use, subdivision or development in outstanding landscapes and natural features and Maori cultural values associated with landscapes.*

*12.1.4.1 That both positive and adverse effects of development on outstanding natural features and landscapes be taken into account when assessing applications for resource consent.*

*12.1.4.2 That activities avoid, remedy or mitigate significant adverse effects on both the natural and the cultural values and elements which make up the distinctive character of outstanding natural features and landscapes.*

*12.1.4.3 That the cumulative effect of changes to the character of Outstanding Landscapes be taken into account in assessing applications for resource consent.*

*12.1.4.4 That the visibility of Outstanding Landscape Features, when viewed from public places, be taken into account in assessing applications for resource consent.*

*12.1.4.5 That the adverse visual effect of built development on outstanding landscapes and ridgelines be avoided, remedied or mitigated.*

*12.1.4.6 That activities avoid or mitigate adverse effects on the scientific and amenity values associated with outstanding natural features.*

12.1.4.7 That the diversity of outstanding landscapes at a District-wide and local level be maintained and enhanced where practicable.

12.1.4.8 That the trend is towards the enhancement rather than the deterioration of landscape values, including the encouragement of the restoration of degraded landscapes.

12.1.4.9 That the high value of indigenous vegetation to Outstanding Landscapes be taken into account when assessing applications for resource consents.

12.1.4.10 That landscape values be protected by encouraging development that takes in account:

- (a) the rarity or value of the landscape and/or landscape features;
- (b) the visibility of the development;
- (c) important views as seen from public vantage points on a public road, public reserve, the foreshore and the coastal marine area;
- (d) the desirability of avoiding adverse effects on the elements that contribute to the distinctive character of the coastal landscapes, especially outstanding landscapes and natural features, ridges and headlands or those features that have significant amenity value;
- (e) the contribution of natural patterns, composition and extensive cover of indigenous vegetation to landscape values;
- (f) Maori cultural values associated with landscapes;
- (g) the importance of the activity in enabling people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being.

### 3.3 Visual catchment

The visual catchment of the proposed structure is defined by the landform, and vegetation. Views from within the valley and settlement to the north of the Site are precluded by landform and vegetation, and views from the beach to the north east are partially screened by existing vegetation, although the toilet block is evident (refer to [photos 4 and 6](#)). The toilet block tends to be screened from the reserve, and from the beach close to the reserve by vegetation (refer to [photo 7](#)).

Both the toilets and the proposed Site are visible from within the slipway car park at its northern end (refer to [photos 2 and 3](#)), although vegetation soften the visibility of the future structure from these locations.

Viewers on the beach to the south west, and on the water to the west have the ability to gain views of the subject Site (refer to [photo 5](#)). When viewed from the water to the west, and from the beach to the north west, the Site is backdropped by the steeply rising, and vegetated landform (refer to [photo 1](#)).

## 4.0 IDENTIFIED LANDSCAPE VALUES

### Landscape Values

The Northland Regional Policy Statement identifies Tokerau Rangaunu wetland as an Outstanding Natural Landscape, describing the landscape as:

*“... An interesting and subtle landscape that spans virtually from the semi-exposed coast of Tokerau Beach to the protected waters of Rangaunu Harbour. It has a predominantly “wet vegetated” character that is interwoven with areas of drier shrubland. It also features a number of bodies of standing open fresh water. The terrain is predominantly flat, but with a subtle contour emerging in a linear pattern that relates to relic dune forms. As such the site has a sense of being very open and expansive (which it is, with an area of over 2000ha). It also has a coastal atmosphere, particularly on its*

eastern margin where it is most closely related to Tokerau Beach. A large proportion of the ONL is contained within land administered by the Department of Conservation.

*As a wetland / bog area, this landscape is unusual and of a type that is much reduced from its original extent. With the relatively well-used Inland Road running through the midst of the unit, this is one of the few places in Northland where a large number of people pass close by a wetland area in their travel by car. Other than that interface with the main road, much of the unit is relatively inaccessible and remote in its character..”*

The subject Site and settlement are not overlain by the ONL.

### **Natural character values**

The Northland Regional Policy Statement identified Aurere Beach and the coastal landscape to the east as being overlain by a High Natural Character Area (113/04).

This HNCA is described as:

*Long beach unit. At south end there is a narrow band of spinifex on the foredune face. On the crest there is knobbly clubrush, spinifex & introduced grasses. To the north the unit includes the intermediate dune with native shrubs (especially pohuehue, manuka), knobbly clubrush, introduced grasses & herbs. Swale area & lakes are in other units.*

*Sandy natural surfaces, especially supratidal sands. Comparatively mature indigenous vegetation relative to the site conditions, age and natural disturbance history/regime of the foredune. Minimal human-mediated hydrological or landform changes except for a few access-ways in the north.*

To the north, and separated from the Site by Ramp Road, Tokerau Beach is identified as a HNCA (113/13):

*Backdune adjoining 113/12. From northern end of the grass & Norfolk pines, the foredune is also included within unit. Fore dune is dominated by spinifex with some blowouts, introduced grasses, knobbly clubrush. Back dune with pohuehue, bracken, knobbly clubrush, grasses & other native shrubs.*

*Some unvegetated sandy natural surfaces. Otherwise largely indigenous vegetation with relatively few pest plants. Minor human-mediated hydrological or landform changes, associated with off-road vehicles.*

Inland from, and some 200m to the south of the Site 113/06 (Tokerau Beach) is an ONLA. It is described as;

*Major dune swale between frontal/relict dunes & paleodunes (inland of the defined coastal environment). Oioi rushland with islands of manuka. Flax, cabbage tree, & raupo margins with native shrubs (manuka, mingimingi). Occasional lupin & gorse. Small peat-stained pond.*

*Wetland complex with comparatively mature indigenous vegetation relative to the site conditions, age and natural disturbance history/regime. Minimal human-mediated hydrological or landform changes and no obvious human structures*

## **5.0 ASSESSMENT OF LANDSCAPE EFFECTS**

Landscape effects are described in the methodology, contained in [Appendix 2](#). In summary, landscape effects derive from changes in the physical landscape, which may give rise to changes in its character and how this is experienced. This may in turn affect the perceived value ascribed to the landscape and includes visual amenity effects under the ambit of ‘experiential attributes’.

Change in a landscape does not, of itself, necessarily constitute an adverse landscape or natural character effect. Landscape is dynamic and is constantly changing over time in both subtle and more dramatic transformational ways, these changes are both natural and human induced. What is important in managing landscape change is that adverse effects are avoided or sufficiently mitigated to ameliorate the effects of the change in land use. The aim is to provide a high amenity environment through appropriate design outcomes, including planting that can provide an adequate substitution for the currently experienced amenity.

## 5.1 Biophysical abiotic attributes

The key abiotic attributes of the site include the landform, its geology, and hydrology. The proposed location for the siren and monopole has been modified as a result of development of the toilet block, associated sewerage treatment and slip way. These works have resulted in a change in the landform and abiotic values in the immediate vicinity.

The proposal will result in localised and minimal volume of earthworks (volume of 3.5m<sup>3</sup> over 6.5m<sup>2</sup>) to facilitate construction of the siren monopole and these works will not affect the abiotic attributes of the Site.

## 5.2 Biophysical biotic attributes

The biotic attributes of the Site are the living organisms which shape an ecosystem. The works facilitated by the consent will be confined to existing lawn areas and will not affect any native vegetation. Neither existing native nor exotic vegetation will not be affected. The change in the biotic attributes of the Site will be very small.

## 5.3 Experiential attributes

Experiential attributes comprise the interpretation of human experience of the landscape. This includes visible changes in the character of the landscape – its naturalness as well as its sense of wildness and remoteness including effects on natural darkness of the night sky.

The proposed siren monopole will be located on the margin of a reserve and informal car park which – as illustrated in [photos 1, 2 and 3](#) – display a modified character which, during the summer and at weekends is likely to be an active and busy location. In addition, the proposed structure will be located immediately adjacent to an existing toilet block.

Viewed from all situations within this linear reserve area, the structure will be viewed within the immediate context of the existing Norfolk Island Pine trees, and these elements – being strongly vertical in form, and of a large scale, will temper the prominence of the proposed structure, as well as forming a dark backdrop. This backdrop, against which the structure will (from the majority of locations) be viewed, will preclude the structure from being viewed as a skyline element and will further reduce its prominence.

Although the structure will be close to the beach, views from the beach will be moderated by the existing backdrop vegetation (refer to [photos 11, 12 and 13](#)). When viewed from locations on the beach to the north east, the structure will also be seen in the proximate context of the existing dwellings at the eastern end of Ramp Road (refer to [photo 13](#))

The proposed structure will therefore not detract from the landscape character of the reserve or beach.

Viewed from locations on Ramp Road to the north west of the Site, the structure will be largely screened by the existing trees (refer to [photo 2](#)). Similarly, locations to the west such as the access to the freedom campervan parking, the trees will screen the structure (refer to [photo 8](#)).

When experienced from the CMA, the structure will be difficult to identify against the dark background of the existing trees vegetation.

The manner in which individuals respond to, and perceive built form or structures is affected by the purpose of those structures. Whilst a dwelling, constructed in close proximity to a beach may be regarded negatively by many observers, a surf lifesaving club, in the same location is likely to be perceived more positively by many people. Where a building or structure has a function which benefits the public and community, then the community is more likely to perceive those buildings or structures in a positive (or less negative) light.

Although the proposed structure will result in a perceptible change to its immediate environs, it is the opinion of the author that it will not detract from the wider social and associative values. As noted above, the proposed structure is likely to be regarded in a positive light, its function being for the public benefit and as such, it is the opinion of the author that the experiential attributes of the landscape of the Site will only be affected to a very small degree.

Turning to the potential adverse visual amenity effect of the proposal, the various individuals within the catchment have been discussed above, and it is the opinion of the author that the level of effect that will be generated by the proposal and experienced by individual viewer groups<sup>4</sup> will be as follows:

- Visitors to the beach: Very low
- Visitors to the reserve: Low.
- Occupants of nearby dwellings (#163 and #161): Low.

With regard to the third bullet point above, as with receptors within the reserve, occupants of these dwellings will experience views of the structure within the immediate context of the trees (refer to [photo 1](#)). Number 163 offers the most direct views to the structure, but this single storey dwelling – as is evidenced by photo 4 – is principally oriented towards the Bay with only small windows facing the Site. It is the opinion of the author that the level of effect that will be generated by the proposal and experienced by occupants of this dwelling will be low.

The upper floor deck of #161 offers views from the eastern side of the dwelling to the Bay. Views to the south and toward the Site are 'along the axis' of the line of existing trees, and the proposed structure will be partially screened by the canopy of these elements. It is the opinion of the author that the level of effect that will be generated by the proposal and experienced by occupants of this dwelling will be very low.

Dwellings further to the west will be screened from the Site by the existing trees.

## 5.4 Landscape effects – Social, cultural and associative attributes

Social, cultural and associative values are linked with individual's relationship with the landscape, their memories, the way they interact with and use the landscape and the historical evidence of that relationship.

It is understood that the proposed Site does not affect any specific archaeological sites. In addition, it is understood that consultation has been undertaken with mana whenua and that the outcome of that consultation has indicated that there is support for the application.

Although the proposed structure will result in a perceptible change to its immediate environs, it is the opinion of the author that it will not detract from the wider social and associative values. As noted above, the proposed structure is likely to be regarded in a positive light, its function being for the public benefit and as such, it is the opinion of the author that the social, cultural, archaeological and associative attributes of the landscape of the Site will only be affected to a very small degree.

## 5.5 Summary of landscape effects

---

<sup>4</sup> The determination of the level of effect takes into account the sensitivity of different 'types' of receptor. Visitors to the reserve, and users of the road are transient viewers and have a lower sensitivity than occupants of dwellings.

In summary, any landscape effects would be limited to an existing area that has been previously modified and these changes have resulted in a lowering of the sensitivity of the Site in terms of its abiotic, and biotic attributes. The proposal will result a very small change in the abiotic and biotic attributes.

The proposed structure will be most visible from proximate locations within the visual catchment, but those affected will be transitory individuals, and it is likely that positive associations will be attributed to the structure. From the majority of view locations the structure will be experienced against the backdrop of the existing trees.

It is the opinion of the author that the proposal will not further detract from the landscape character of the Site and its immediate context. In addition, the proposal will not detract from the visual amenity of receptors in the immediate or wider visual catchment.

Overall it is the opinion of the author that the potential adverse landscape effects will be low.

## 6.0 ASSESSMENT OF NATURAL CHARACTER EFFECTS

Appendix 1 of the Northland Regional Policy Statement lists natural character attributes as follows:

- a) Natural elements, processes and patterns;
- b) Biophysical, ecological and geomorphological aspects;
- c) Natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, wetlands, reefs, freshwater springs and surf breaks;
- d) The natural movement of water and sediment;
- e) The natural darkness of the night sky;
- f) Places or areas that are wild or scenic; and
- g) Experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea; and their context or setting.

Of the above, natural elements, processes and patterns, biophysical, ecological and geomorphological aspects, natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, wetlands, reefs, freshwater springs and surf breaks and the natural movement of water and sediment fall into the previously discussed biophysical (biotic and abiotic) categories.

The natural darkness of the night sky, places or areas that are wild or scenic and experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea; and their context or setting have been previously addressed under experiential attributes.

In summary therefore, the proposal will result a very small change in the abiotic and biotic attributes, and will be most visible from proximate locations within the visual catchment. Those affected will be transitory individuals, and it is likely that positive associations will be attributed to the structure. From the majority of view locations the structure will be experienced against the backdrop of the existing trees.

Overall it is considered that the adverse natural character effects of the proposal will be very low.

## 7.0 AFFECT ON THE STATUTORY FRAMEWORK

The objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement focus on the protection and enhancement of landscape and natural character values. These cascade down to the District Plan, and the Conservation Zone. The zone is described as being areas of land:

*“Management of this land must reflect the reasons for its protection or reservation, and the aspirations of the community. In some cases, appropriate management will include development of public facilities and structures. In other cases, the need to conserve the physical environment will dictate that little development occurs.”*

The objectives and policies for this Zone seek ensure that the area is used and developed in a way which will ensure that any adverse effects on the surrounding area are avoided, remedied or mitigated. The objectives and policies of the Coastal Environment seek the avoidance, remedying or mitigation of adverse effects on the natural character, natural features and natural landscapes of the Coastal Environment, protection and enhancement of natural, ecological, landscape, cultural and heritage values where open spaces are managed primarily for conservation and have high natural, ecological, landscape, cultural and heritage values.

The proposal will not adversely affect neighbouring properties or areas, and will not detract from the natural character and landscape values of the area, nor will it adversely affect the open space and amenity values of, or access to the coastal environment. The proposal will not be viewed as a skyline element and is not situated on a ridge or headland.

The proposed structure will be a Restricted Discretionary activity, with the following discretionary infringements:

- 9.7.5.2.2 Building Height;
- 9.7.5.1.8 Noise;
- 12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities within Outstanding Landscapes.

The matters for discretion are listed in 9.6.5.2.2 and 9.6.5.2.5, as follows:

- (a) *the extent to which adjacent properties will be adversely affected in terms of visual domination, overshadowing, loss of privacy and loss of access to sunlight and daylight;*
- (b) *the ability to mitigate any adverse effects by way of increased separation distances between buildings or the provision of landscaping and screening;*
- (c) *the extent of the building area and the scale of the building and the extent to which they are compatible with both the built and natural environments in the vicinity.*
- (a) *the extent to which adjacent properties will be adversely affected in terms of visual domination, overshadowing, loss of privacy and loss of access to sunlight and daylight;*
- (b) *the location and proximity of adjacent residential units, and the outdoor space used by those units;*
- (c) *the ability to mitigate any adverse effects of loss of sunlight.*

The proposal will not generate shading or visual dominance such that neighbouring properties are adversely affected.

Overall it is considered that the proposal is consistent with the provisions of the relevant documents, where these relate to landscape and visual matters.

## 8.0 CONCLUSION

Simon Cocker Landscape Architecture has been engaged by the B&A to prepare a landscape assessment on behalf of the applicant (Northland Regional Council). Northland Regional Council (NRC) is coordinating the rollout of new tsunami sirens across Te Taitokerau Northland.

Siren #80 is proposed at Ramp Road, Tokerau Beach.

This assessment will describe the proposal, describe the existing environment and provide an analysis of the landscape and its values. It will assess landscape (including natural character and visual amenity) effects of the proposed activity.



Siren 80 is located within the Conservation Zone, Outstanding Landscape and Coastal Hazard 2 under the Operative Far North Plan and in the Natural Open Space and Coastal Environment under the Proposed District Plan.

It is understood that consent is required as a Restricted Discretionary activity for the following infringements:

- 9.7.5.2.2 Building Height;
- 9.7.5.1.8 Noise;
- 12.1.6.3 Discretionary Activities within Outstanding Landscapes.

The sirens will be the TWS-295 structure, mounted on an 9.75m height mast.

Located alongside an existing toilet block, and close to a row of mature Norfolk Island Pine trees, the structure will be situated within an area that has experienced some modification. The area, which is a reserve is used for informal parking and recreation, and provides access to the beach.

The structure (which will be finished in a colour that has a Light Reflectance Value of approximately 15%), will be viewed against the existing trees from the majority of locations.

The estimated construction timeframe for the siren is 10 days, including to form the platform, install the concrete block foundation, install the mast, mount the siren, and connect the power supply.

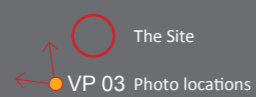
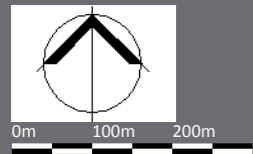
It is the opinion of the author that the resulting landscape and natural character effect of the proposal will be low. The potential adverse visual amenity effect will be (at most) low for all individuals.

The proposal will be consistent with the provisions of the statutory instruments where they apply to the scope of this report, and the proposal is considered to be appropriate from a landscape and visual perspective.

Simon Cocker



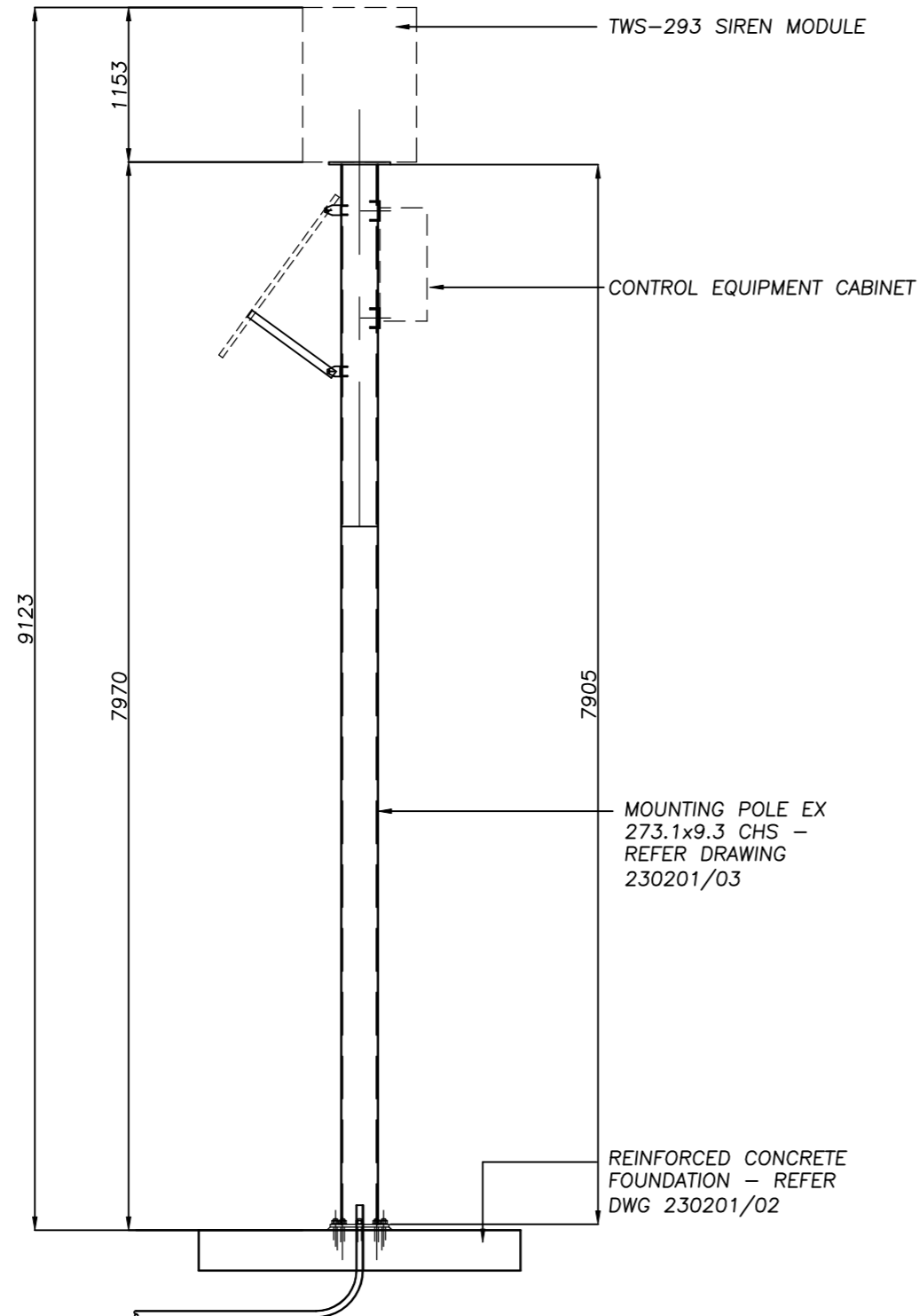
## APPENDIX 1: Figures



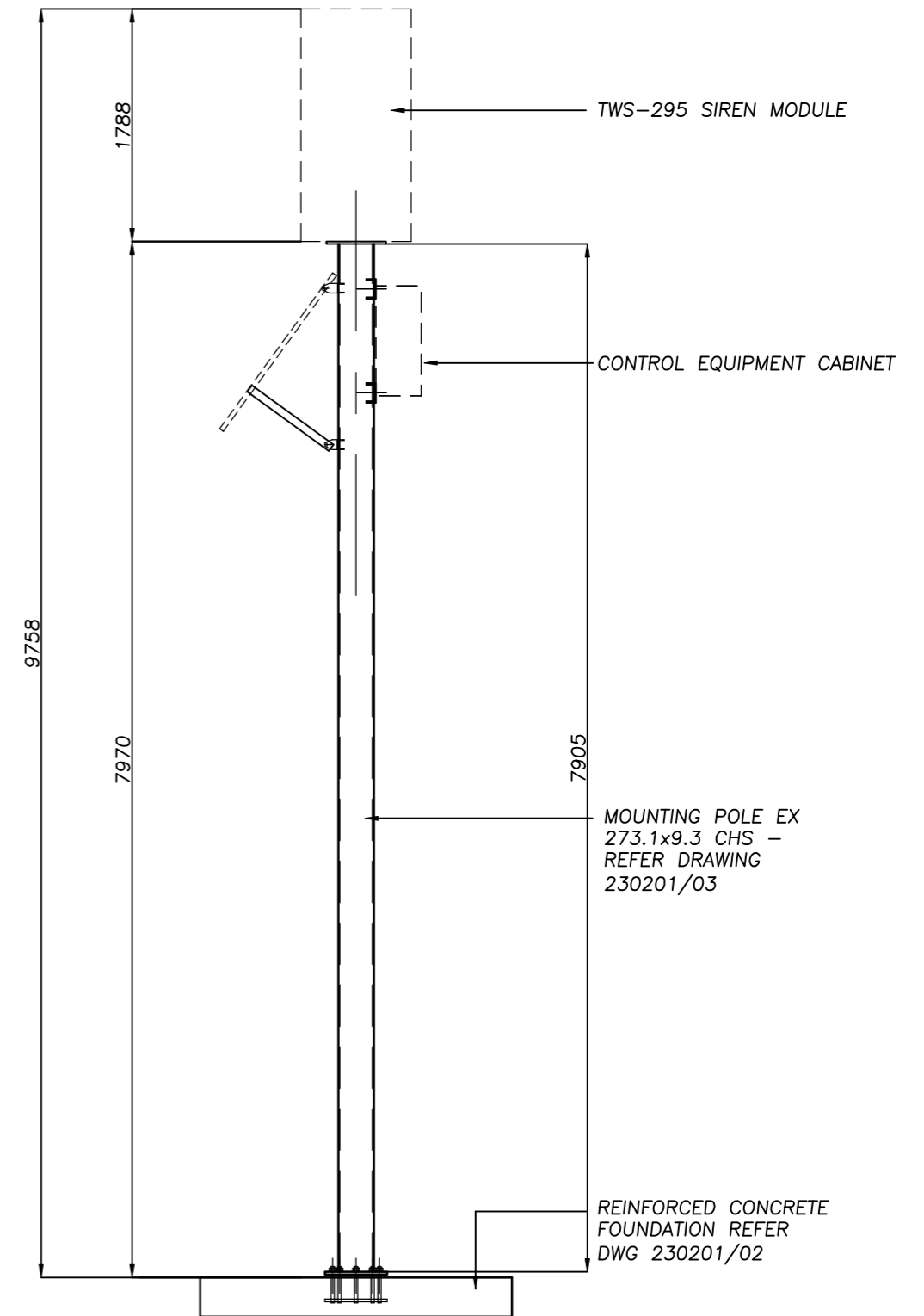
**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
 FIGURE 1 - Landscape context and topography



Figure 2a



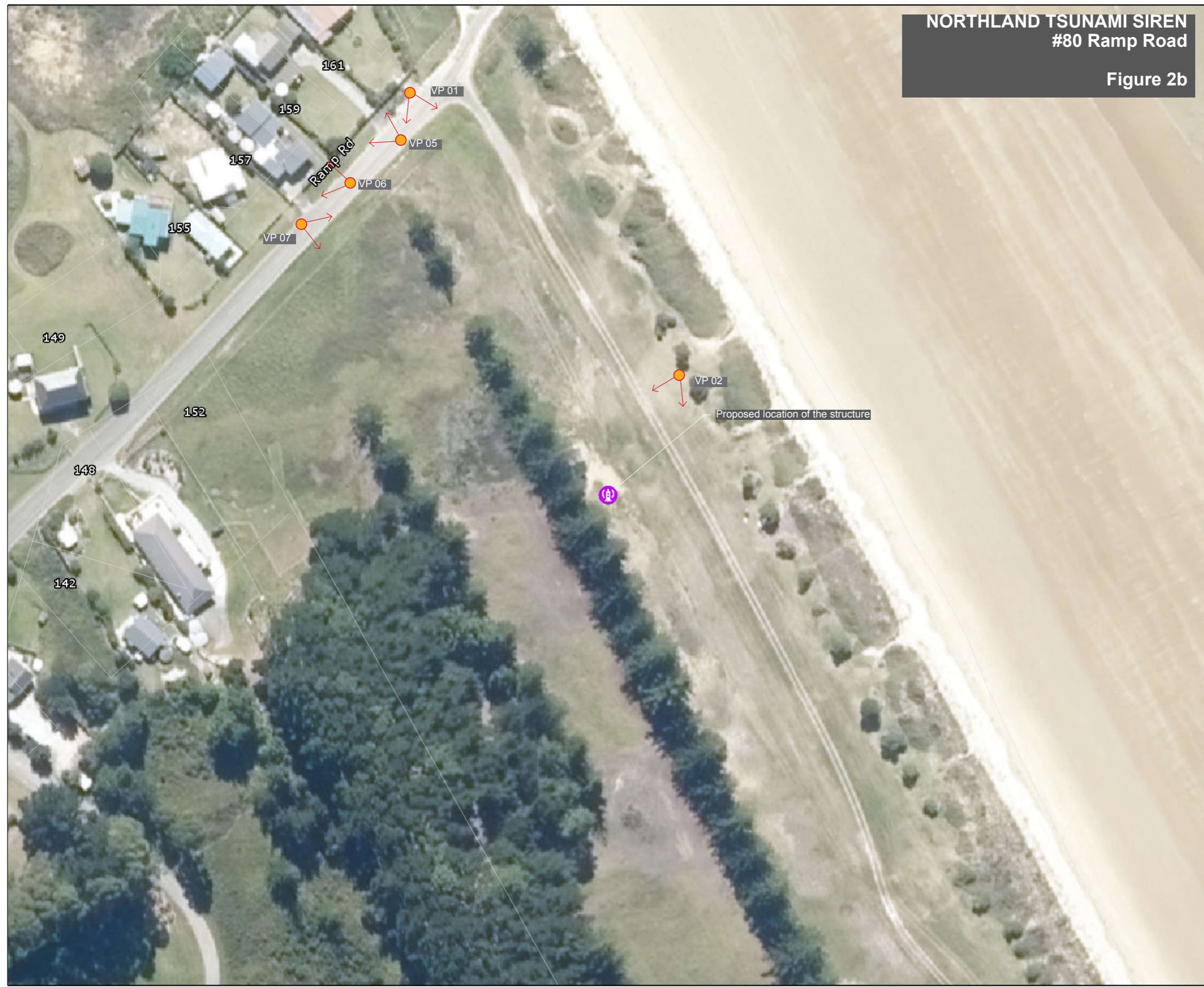
GENERAL ARRANGEMENT – TWS-293 SIREN  
1:50



GENERAL ARRANGEMENT – TWS-295 SIREN  
1:50

# NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN #80 Ramp Road

Figure 2b



Tsunami Siren # 80  
Siren Type: 295

Location: Opposite 163 Ramp Road, Lake Ohia

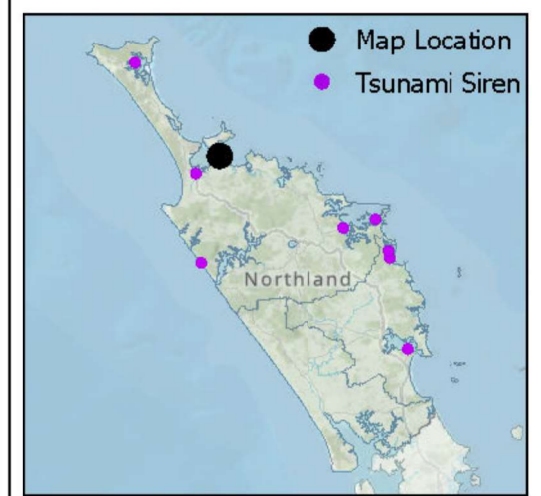
GPS: -34.944837, 173.383711

Property Owner: Far North District Council

Parcel ID: 6851424

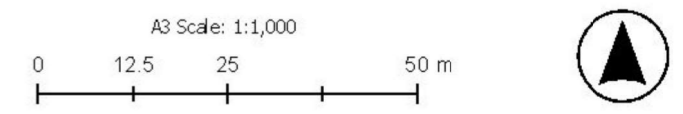
Legal Desc: Part Section 26 Blk V Rangaunu SD

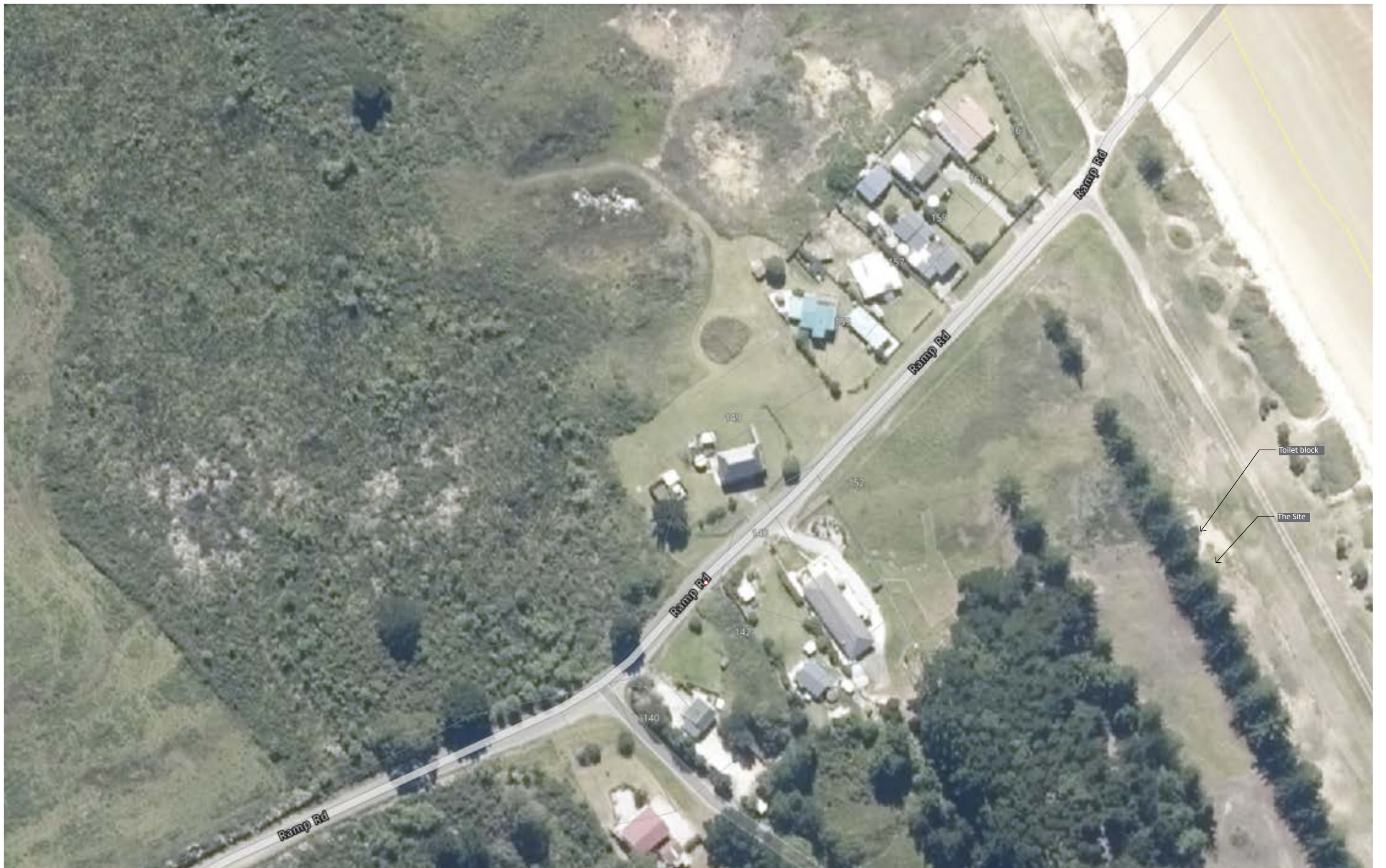
Title:  
VP3 Photo locations



Data sources: Eagle Technology, Land Information New Zealand and Northland Regional Council

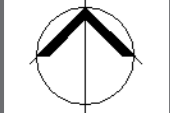
## Tsunami Siren # 80 - Ramp Road





Toilet block

The Site



• The Site

0m 10m 20m 30m 40m 50m

### NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN #80 Ramp Road

FIGURE 3 - The Site with the proposal in context





Indicative location and size of proposed structure

Photo 1: View to Site from #163 Ramp Road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Indicative location and size of proposed structure  
(hidden by vegetation)

Photo 2: View north to Site from south end of reserve area

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)







Photo 3: View to Site crest of dune ridge

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Photo 4: View to #163 Ramp Road from road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Photo 5: #161 Ramp Road from road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Photo 6: #159 Ramp Road from road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Photo 2: View to Site from #159 Ramp Road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Indicative location of proposed structure

Photo 8: View north east towards Site from track access to freedom camper park.

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Indicative location of proposed structure

Photo 9: View south to Site from beach

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Photo 10: View east to Site from junction of State Highway 10 and Inland Road

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)







Indicative location of proposed structure

Photo 11: View to Site from beach

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Indicative location of proposed structure

Photo 12: View to Site from beach

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)





Indicative location of proposed structure

Photo 13: View to Site from beach

Photo date - 30 August 2024

**NORTHLAND TSUNAMI SIREN**  
**#80 Ramp Road**  
Photos

(Photographs taken with digital equivalent of 50mm focal length unless otherwise specified)



## **APPENDIX 2: Landscape and Visual Effects Assessment Methodology**

# Landscape and Visual Effects Assessment Methodology

## Introduction

The landscape and visual effects assessment process provides a framework for assessing and identifying the nature and level of likely effects that may result from a proposed development. Such effects can occur in relation to changes to physical elements, the existing character of the landscape and the experience of it. In addition, the landscape assessment method may include an iterative design development processes which includes stakeholder involvement. The outcome of any assessment approach should seek to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects. A separate assessment is required to assess changes in natural character in coastal areas and other waterbodies.

When undertaking landscape and visual effects assessments, it is important that a structured and consistent approach is used to ensure that findings are clear and objective. Judgement should always be based on skills and experience, and be supported by explicit evidence and reasoned argument.

While landscape and visual effects assessments are closely related, they form separate procedures. The assessment of the potential effect on the landscape forms the first step in this process and is carried out as an effect on an environmental resource (i.e. landscape elements, features and character). The assessment of visual effects considers how changes to the physical landscape affect the viewing audience. The types of effects can be summarised as follows:

**Landscape effects:**

*Change in the physical landscape, which may change its characteristics or qualities.*

**Visual effects:**

*Change to views which may change the visual amenity experienced by people.*

The policy context, existing landscape resource and locations from which a development or change is visible all inform the 'baseline' for landscape and visual effects assessments. To assess effects, the landscape must first be described, including an understanding of the key landscape characteristics and qualities. This process, known as landscape characterisation, is the basic tool for understanding landscape character and may involve subdividing the landscape into character areas or types. The condition of the landscape (i.e. the state of an individual area of landscape or landscape feature) should also be described alongside a judgement made on the value or importance of the potentially affected landscape.

This outline of the landscape and visual effects assessment methodology has been undertaken with reference to the Quality Planning Landscape Guidance Note<sup>1</sup> and its signposts to examples of best practice which include the UK guidelines for landscape and visual impact assessment<sup>2</sup> and Te Tangi a te Manu<sup>3</sup>.

Assessing landscape effects requires an understanding of the nature of the landscape resource and the magnitude of change which results from a proposed development to determine the overall level of landscape effects.

## Nature of the landscape resource

Assessing the nature of the landscape resource considers both the susceptibility of an area of landscape to change and the value of the landscape. This will vary upon the following factors:

- Physical elements such as topography / hydrology / soils / vegetation;
- Existing land use;
- The pattern and scale of the landscape;
- Visual enclosure / openness of views and distribution of the viewing audience;

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.qualityplanning.org.nz/index.php/planning-tools/land/landscape>

<sup>2</sup> Landscape Institute and Institute of Environmental Management and Assessment (2013) Guidelines for Landscape and Visual Impact Assessment, 3rd Edition (GLVIA3)

<sup>3</sup> Te Tangi a te Manu (Aotearoa New Zealand Landscape Guidelines), NZILA July 2022.

- The zoning of the land and its associated anticipated level of development;
- The value or importance placed on the landscape, particularly those confirmed in statutory documents; and
- The scope for mitigation, appropriate to the existing landscape.

The susceptibility to change takes account of both the attributes of the receiving environment and the characteristics of the proposed development. It considers the ability of a specific type of change occurring without generating adverse effects and/or achievement of landscape planning policies and strategies.

Landscape value derives from the importance that people and communities, including tangata whenua, attach to particular landscapes and landscape attributes. This may include the classification of Outstanding Natural Landscape (RMA s.6(b)) based on important biophysical, sensory/ aesthetic and associative landscape attributes, which have potential to be affected by a proposed development.

### Magnitude of Landscape Change

The magnitude of landscape change judges the amount of change that is likely to occur to existing areas of landscape, landscape features, or key landscape attributes. In undertaking this assessment, it is important that the size or scale of the change is considered within the geographical extent of the area influenced and the duration of change, including whether the change is reversible. In some situations, the loss /change or enhancement to existing landscape elements such as vegetation or earthworks should also be quantified.

When assessing the level of landscape effects, it is important to be clear about what factors have been considered when making professional judgements. This can include consideration of any benefits which result from a proposed development. Table 1 below helps to explain this process. The tabulating of effects is only intended to inform overall judgements.

Contributing factors		Higher	Lower
Nature of Landscape Resource	Susceptibility to change	The landscape context has limited existing landscape detractors which make it highly vulnerable to the type of change which would result from the proposed development.	The landscape context has many detractors and can easily accommodate the proposed development without undue consequences to landscape character.
	The value of the landscape	The landscape includes important biophysical, sensory and associative attributes. The landscape requires protection as a matter of national importance (ONF/L).	The landscape lacks any important biophysical, sensory or associative attributes. The landscape is of low or local importance.
Magnitude of Change	Size or scale	Total loss or addition of key features or elements. Major changes in the key characteristics of the landscape, including significant aesthetic or perceptual elements.	The majority of key features or elements are retained. Key characteristics of the landscape remain intact with limited aesthetic or perceptual change apparent.
	Geographical extent	Wider landscape scale.	Site scale, immediate setting.
	Duration and reversibility	Permanent. Long term (over 10 years).	Reversible. Short Term (0-5 years).

Table 1: Determining the level of landscape effects

### Visual Effects

To assess the visual effects of a proposed development on a landscape, a visual baseline must first be defined. The visual 'baseline' forms a technical exercise which identifies the area where the development may be visible, the potential viewing audience, and the key representative public viewpoints from which visual effects are assessed.

The viewing audience comprises the individuals or groups of people occupying or using the properties, roads, footpaths and public open spaces that lie within the visual envelope or 'zone of visual influence' of the site and proposal. Where

possible, computer modelling can assist to determine the theoretical extent of visibility together with field work undertaken to confirm this. Where appropriate, key representative viewpoints should be agreed with the relevant local authority.

### Nature of the viewing audience

The nature of the viewing audience is assessed in terms of the susceptibility of the viewing audience to change and the value attached to views. The susceptibility of the viewing audience is determined by assessing the occupation or activity of people experiencing the view at particular locations and the extent to which their interest or activity may be focused on views of the surrounding landscape. This relies on a landscape architect's judgement in respect of visual amenity and reaction of people who may be affected by a proposal. This should also recognise that people more susceptible to change generally include: residents at home, people engaged in outdoor recreation whose attention or interest is likely to be focused on the landscape and on particular views; visitors to heritage assets or other important visitor attractions; and communities where views contribute to the landscape setting.

The value or importance attached to particular views may be determined with respect to its popularity or numbers of people affected or reference to planning instruments such as viewshafts or view corridors.

Important viewpoints are also likely to appear in guide books or tourist maps and may include facilities provided for its enjoyment. There may also be references to this in literature or art, which also acknowledge a level of recognition and importance.

### Magnitude of Visual Change

The assessment of visual effects also considers the potential magnitude of change which will result from views of a proposed development. This takes account of the size or scale of the effect, the geographical extent of views and the duration of visual change which may distinguish between temporary (often associated with construction) and permanent effects where relevant. Preparation of any simulations of visual change to assist this process should be guided by best practice as identified by the NZILA<sup>4</sup>.

When determining the overall level of visual effect, the nature of the viewing audience is considered together with the magnitude of change resulting from the proposed development. Table 2 has been prepared to help guide this process:

Contributing factors		Higher	Lower
Nature of Landscape Resource	Susceptibility to change	Views from dwellings and recreation areas where attention is typically focussed on the landscape..	Views from places of employment and other places where the focus is typically incidental to its landscape context. Views from transport corridors.
	The value of the landscape	Viewpoint is recognised by the community such as an important view shaft, identification on tourist maps or in art and literature. High visitor numbers.	Viewpoint is not typically recognised or valued by the community. Infrequent visitor numbers..
Magnitude of Change	Size or scale	Loss or addition of key features in the view. High degree of contrast with existing landscape elements (i.e. in terms of form scale, mass, line, height, colour and texture). Full view of the proposed development	Most key features of view retained. Low degree of contrast with existing landscape elements (i.e. in terms of form scale, mass, line, height, colour and texture). Glimpse / no view of the proposed development.
	Geographical extent	Front on views. Near distance views; Change visible across a wide area.	Oblique views. Long distance views. Small portion of change visible.
	Duration and reversibility	Permanent. Long term (over 15 years).	Transient / temporary. Short Term (0-5 years).

### Nature of Effects

<sup>4</sup> Best Practice Guide: Visual Simulations BPG 10.2, NZILA

In combination with assessing the level of effects, the landscape and visual effects assessment also considers the nature of effects in terms of whether this will be positive (beneficial) or negative (adverse) in the context within which it occurs. Neutral effects can also occur where landscape or visual change is benign.

It should also be noted that a change in a landscape does not, of itself, necessarily constitute an adverse landscape or visual effect. Landscape is dynamic and is constantly changing over time in both subtle and more dramatic transformational ways, these changes are both natural and human induced. What is important in managing landscape change is that adverse effects are avoided or sufficiently mitigated to ameliorate the effects of the change in land use. The aim is to provide a high amenity environment through appropriate design outcomes.

This assessment of the nature effects can be further guided by Table 3 set out below:

Nature of effect	Use and definition
<b>Adverse (negative):</b>	The proposed development would be out of scale with the landscape or at odds with the local pattern and landform which results in a reduction in landscape and / or visual amenity values
<b>Neutral (benign):</b>	The proposed development would complement (or blend in with) the scale, landform and pattern of the landscape maintaining existing landscape and / or visual amenity values
<b>Beneficial (positive):</b>	The proposed development would enhance the landscape and / or visual amenity through removal of restoration of existing degraded landscapes uses and / or addition of positive elements or features

Table 3: Determining the Nature of Effects

## Cumulative Effects

During the scoping of an assessment, where appropriate, agreement should be reached with the relevant local authority as to the nature of cumulative effects to be assessed. This can include effects of the same type of development (e.g. wind farms) or the combined effect of all past, present and approved future development<sup>5</sup> of varying types, taking account of both the permitted baseline and receiving environment. Cumulative effects can also be positive, negative or benign.

### Cumulative Landscape Effects

Cumulative landscape effects can include additional or combined changes in components of the landscape and changes in the overall landscape character. The extent within which cumulative landscape effects are assessed can cover the entire landscape character area within which the proposal is located, or alternatively, the zone of visual influence from which the proposal can be observed.

### Cumulative Visual Effects

Cumulative visual effects can occur in combination (seen together in the same view), in succession (where the observer needs to turn their head) or sequentially (with a time lapse between instances where proposals are visible when moving through a landscape). Further visualisations may be required to indicate the change in view compared with the appearance of the project on its own.

Determining the nature and level of cumulative landscape and visual effects should adopt the same approach as the project assessment in describing both the nature of the viewing audience and magnitude of change leading to a final judgement. Mitigation may require broader consideration which may extend beyond the geographical extent of the project being assessed.

## Determining the Overall Level of Effects

The landscape and visual effects assessment concludes with an overall assessment of the likely level of landscape and visual effects. This step also takes account of the nature of effects and the effectiveness of any proposed mitigation.

---

<sup>5</sup> The life of the statutory planning document or unimplemented resource consents



This step informs an overall judgement identifying what level of effects are likely to be generated as indicated in Table 4 below. This table which can be used to guide the level of landscape and visual effects uses an adapted seven-point scale derived from Te Tangi a te Manu (Aotearoa New Zealand Landscape Guidelines)

	Effect rating	Use and definition
More than minor	Very high	Total loss of key elements / features / characteristics, i.e. amounts to a complete change of landscape character
	High	Major modification or loss of most key elements / features / characteristics, i.e. little of the pre-development landscape character remains. Concise Oxford English Dictionary Definition High: adjective- Great in amount, value, size, or intensity
	Moderate to high	Modifications of several key elements / features / characteristics of the baseline, i.e. the pre-development landscape character remains evident but materially changed.
	Moderate	Partial loss of or modification to key elements / features / characteristics of the baseline, i.e. new elements may be prominent but not necessarily uncharacteristic within the receiving landscape. Concise Oxford English Dictionary Definition Moderate: adjective- average in amount, intensity, quality or degree
Minor	Moderate to low	Minor loss of or modification to one or more key elements / features / characteristics, i.e. new elements are not prominent or uncharacteristic within the receiving landscape.
	Low	No material loss of or modification to key elements / features / characteristics. i.e. modification or change is not uncharacteristic and absorbed within the receiving landscape. Concise Oxford English Dictionary Definition Low: adjective- 1. Below average in amount, extent, or intensity
Less than minor	Very low	Little or no loss of or modification to key elements/ features/ characteristics of the baseline, i.e. approximating a 'no change' situation.

Table 4: Determining the overall level of landscape and visual effects

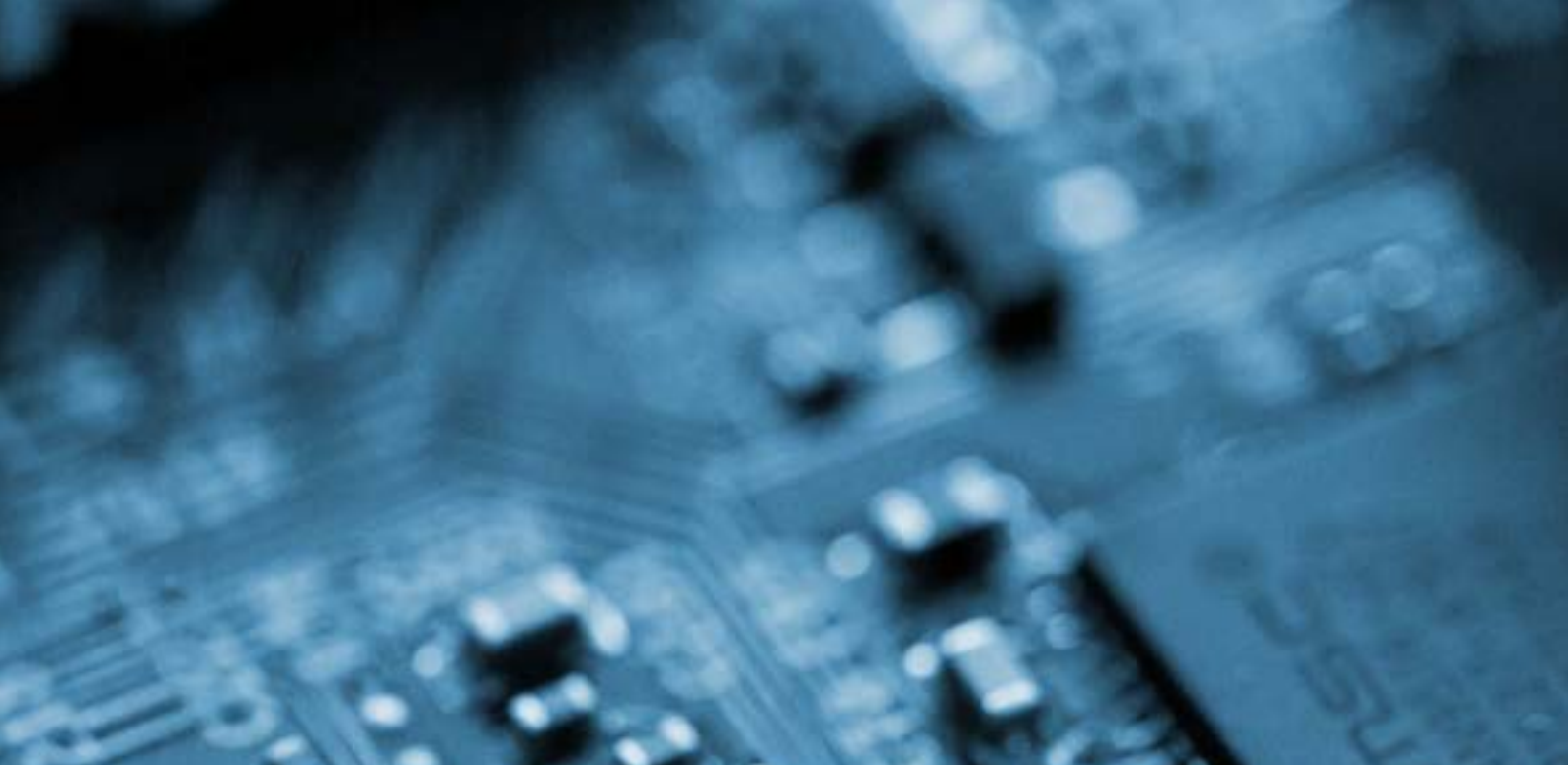
## Determination of “minor”

Decision makers determining whether a resource consent application should be notified must also assess whether the effect on a person is less than minor<sup>6</sup> or an adverse effect on the environment is no more than minor<sup>7</sup>. Likewise, when assessing a non-complying activity, consent can only be granted if the s104D ‘gateway test’ is satisfied. This test requires the decision maker to be assured that the adverse effects of the activity on the environment will be ‘minor’ or not be contrary to the objectives and policies of the relevant planning documents.

These assessments will generally involve a broader consideration of the effects of the activity, beyond the landscape and visual effects. Through this broader consideration, guidance may be sought on whether the likely effects on the landscape resource or effects on a person are considered in relation to ‘minor’. It must also be stressed that more than minor effects on individual elements or viewpoints does not necessarily equate to more than minor effects on the wider landscape resource. In relation to this assessment, moderate-low level effects would generally equate to ‘minor’.

<sup>6</sup> RMA, Section 95E

<sup>7</sup> RMA Section 95D



Project:  
**Northland Regional Council**  
May 31, 2021

---

# DATASHEETS

---

**HSS**



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS





Gabinete electrónico de dos compartimentos

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



*Las sirenas de la serie TWS-290 son las más confiables en el mercado para tonos de alerta y comunicación por voz*

## SIRENAS ELECTRÓNICA DE ALTO POTENCIA

### TWS-295

La combinación de potentes tonos de alarma de alta eficiencia y una transmisión de voz clara e inteligible garantiza una excelente advertencia durante cualquier emergencia. Esto permite al operador notificar y dirigir una advertencia a la población afectada. Con un diseño superior del grupo de altavoces TWS proporciona una verdadera salida de sonido de 360° en todo el rango de frecuencias. La serie TWS-290, con sus amplificadores de alta eficiencia y Los controladores de altavoz duraderos EZ-PULL™ pueden proporcionar advertencia continua durante un mínimo de 30 minutos a plena potencia de salida, únicamente con la energía de la batería. Todos los componentes electrónicos están integrados en un gabinete de aluminio resistente a la corrosión de alta calidad.



#### CARACTERÍSTICAS

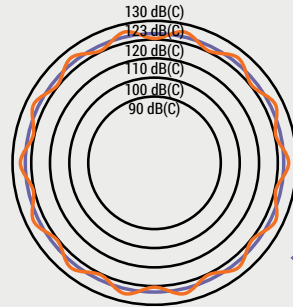
- 5 Módulos omnidireccionales de altavoces ensamblados en una columna vertical
- Gabinete de aluminio con clasificación IP66 con compartimiento de batería separado
- SPL 123 dB(C) @ 100' / 30 m
- El altavoz TWS-295 incluye 5 speakers drivers EZ-PULL™ de alta eficiencia
- Amplificador y transductores de sonido de calidad superior
- Cable de altavoz de 15 metros incluido
- Alimentado por batería, un mínimo de 30 minutos de potencia total con baterías de nuestra recomendación
- Cargador baterías, conmutación por 3 etapas compensada por temperatura
- Controles locales o controles remotos
- 5 Amplificadores de potencia de alta eficiencia
- Controlador de sirena electrónico con SI TEST® - Autocomprobación / diagnóstico silencioso
- Generador de tonos de alarma, transmisión de voz automática y en vivo
- Monitoreo de estado completo que incluye alarma de batería baja, estado del amplificador / altavoz
- Pararrayos de CA incluido (pararrayos de antena incluido con opción TWS-RADIO)
- Seis tonos de advertencia estándar – Wail, Whoop, Attack, Hi-Lo, Alert, Airhorn
- Tonos de advertencia personalizados opcionales
- Tipo de amplificadores Clase D
- Fabricado en polímero de carbono reforzado con fibra no corrosivo. Material no metálico
- Índice de inteligibilidad de STI 0,99. Capacidad de voz clara con respuesta de frecuencia de alta calidad

## RENDIMIENTO ACÚSTICO

<b>SPL @ 1 metro:</b>	153 dB(C)
<b>SPL @ 30 metros:</b>	123 dB(C)
<b>70dB rango ISO 13475-1*:</b>	14,320 m
<b>70dB rango estándar FEMA**:</b>	1,280 m

\* ISO: Reducción de la presión acústica de 6 dB pr. duplicación de la distancia (según ISO 13475-1)

\*\* FEMA: Reducción de presión sonora de 10 dB pr. duplicación de la distancia (según las pautas de FEMA)



## CONDICIONES DEL ENTORNO

<b>Temperatura de operación</b>	-35° C a + 70° C
<b>Temperatura de almacenamiento</b>	-65° C a + 125° C
<b>Humedad no condensada</b>	0 to 95 %

El diseño superior del grupo de altavoces proporciona una verdadera salida de sonido de 360° en todo el rango de frecuencias. SPL +/- 1 dB de disminución en 360°

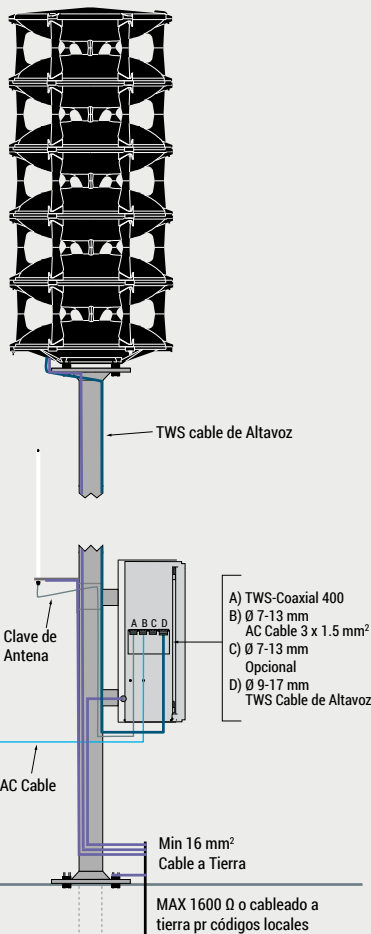
## ELECTRÓNICA DEL SISTEMA

<b>Alimentación de entrada a cargador de batería</b>	120/240 VCA o 50/60 Hz
<b>Salida de cargador de batería</b>	28 VDC, 10A #
<b>Baterías</b>	2 unidades, cada una con 12 V, AGM sellada. 100 AH. consumo en funcionamiento
<b>Consumo en Standby</b>	82 mA, 24 VDC
<b>Corriente de Funcionamiento</b>	111 A, 24 VDC
<b>Potencia de salida por transductor</b>	(típica / máxima) 400 Watts / 600 Watts
<b>Potencia de salida total</b>	(típica / máxima) 2000 Watts / 3000 Watts

# U.L. Componente Reconocido

Componentes	Altura cm (pulgadas)	Ancho cm (pulgadas)	Fondo cm (pulgadas)	Peso kg(lbs)
<b>TWS-295 Speaker</b>	178,8 (70,4)	84,8 (33,4)		137,5 (303)
<b>Gabinete Electrónico</b>	84,5 (33,3)	58,0 (22,8)	35,0 (13,8)	43,0 (94,9)*

\* Menos baterías. Dos baterías: 12 V, selladas. Calcio - Plomo, 24 kg adicionales por batería. No kit de radio. Si se selecciona esta opción adicionar 2,5 kg.



## INFORMACIÓN PARA LA ORDEN

Descripción del producto	Orden No.
Conjunto de altavoces y gabinete de electrónica	TWS-295
<b>Opciones</b>	
Placa de control de estado / activación auxiliar para contacto Activación y estado de cierre	AUXCS
Placa de activación auxiliar para cierre de contacto	AUXIN
Unidad de fuente de alimentación directa de AC de alta eficiencia	TWS -AC-PCU
Módulo GSM	GV-GSM-RTU
Ethernet control / status interface	GV-IP
Control de estado / control de línea bidireccional de Giant Voice®	GV-LLM
Radios con opciones analógicas o digitales con amplio rango de frecuencia dentro de VHF y UHF	TWS-RADIO
Alerta visual omnidireccional	TWS-VISUALERT
Luz estroboscópica montada en celda superior	TWS-TL31R
Interfaz de Giant Voice® a interfaz Whelen	GV-PGINT
Tonos con Sistema PAGA existente	
Alarma de Intrusión	TWS INTRU
Alimentación fotovoltaica/Solar	TWS-SBC200
Par de baterías (2 pcs)	TWSBATT
Escudo Solar para Gabinete Electrónico	TWS SUN SHIELD
Tonos de alerta personalizados	GV-TONES

REV. C

# HSS



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



Two compartment electronics cabinet

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



*The TWS-290 siren series is the most reliable warning siren system on the market for both warning tones and voice communication*

## ALL HAZARD HIGH-POWER SIREN SYSTEM TWS-293

The combination of powerful high efficiency alarm tones and clear, intelligible voice broadcast ensures an excellent warning during any emergency. This enables the operator to notify and direct a warning to the affected population. The superior design of the TWS speaker cluster provides a true 360° sound output throughout the entire frequency range. The TWS-290 series, with its high-efficiency amplifiers and durable EZ-PULL™ speaker drivers, can provide continuous warning for a minimum of 30 minutes at full output power, solely from battery power. All electronics are built into a high-quality corrosion resistant aluminum cabinet.

This makes the TWS-290 siren series the preferred Mass Notification Solution by our customers worldwide.

### FEATURES

- 3 omni-directional speaker cells assembled in a vertical column
- IP 66 rated aluminum cabinet with separate battery compartment
- 119 dB(C) @ 100' / 30 m
- TWS-293 speaker includes 3 pcs high efficiency EZ-PULL™ speaker drivers
- 600 Watts per speaker driver rated max. output power for superior durability
- 15 m speaker cable included
- Battery powered, minimum of 30 minutes of full power output with batteries of our recommendation
- Temperature compensated 3-stage switch mode battery charger
- Local or remote control / status
- 3 pcs high efficiency power amplifiers
- Electronic siren controller featuring SI TEST® - Silent self-test / diagnostics
- Alarm tone generator, automatic and live voice broadcast
- Full status monitoring including low battery alarm, amplifier / speaker status
- AC lightning arrestor included (antenna lightning arrestor included with TWS-RADIO option)
- Six standard warning tones – Wail, Whoop, Attack, Hi-Lo, Alert, Airhorn
- Optional customized warning tones

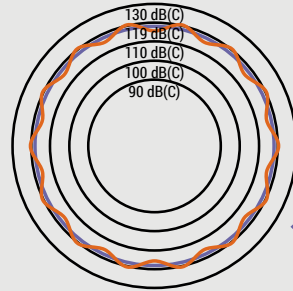


## ACOUSTIC PERFORMANCE

<b>SPL @ 1 m:</b>	149 dB(C)
<b>SPL @ 30 m:</b>	119 dB(C)
<b>70dB range ISO 13475-1*:</b>	9,110 m
<b>70dB range FEMA standard**:</b>	914 m

\* ISO: 6 dB sound pressure reduction pr. doubling of distance (as per ISO 13475-1)

\*\* FEMA: 10 dB sound pressure reduction pr. doubling of distance (as per FEMA guidelines)



## ENVIRONMENTAL

<b>Operating temperature</b>	-35° C to + 70° C
<b>Storage temperature</b>	-65° C to + 125° C
<b>Humidity, non-condensing</b>	0 to 95 %

The superior design of the speaker cluster provides a true 360° high sound output throughout the entire frequency range.

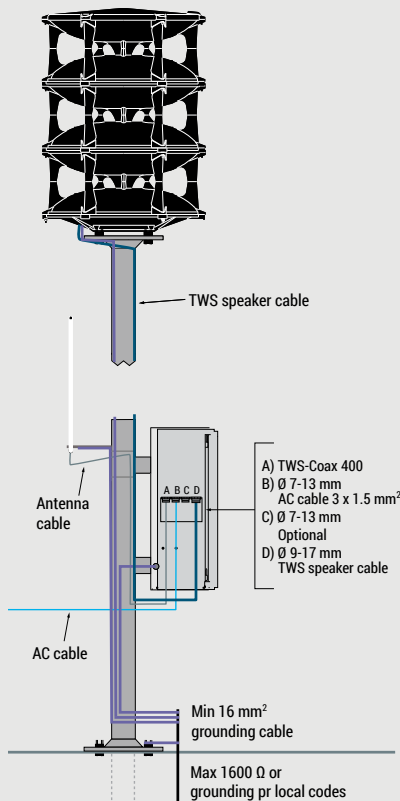
## ELECTRICAL

<b>Battery charger input</b>	Option of 120/240 VAC or 50/60 Hz
<b>Battery charger output</b>	28 VDC, 10A*
<b>Batteries</b>	2 pcs 12 V, AGM sealed. 100 AH. Sold separately
<b>Standby current</b>	82 mA, 24 VDC
<b>Operating current</b>	23 A, 24 VDC
<b>Normal amplifier output power</b>	400 Watts during tone / 500 Watts during voice
<b>Rated total max. output power</b>	1800 Watts

# U.L. recognized component

Component	Height cm (inches)	Width cm (inches)	Depth cm (inches)	Weight kg (lbs.)
<b>TWS-293 speaker</b>	115.3 (45.4)	84.8 (33.4)		93 (205)
<b>Electronics cabinet</b>	84.5 (33.3)	58.0 (22.8)	35.0 (13.8)	36.4 (80.1)*

\* Less batteries. Two batteries: 12 V, sealed, lead-calcium, add 24 kg pr. battery. Less optional radio kit. Add 2.5 kg, if this option is selected.



## ORDERING INFORMATION

Product Description	Order No.
Speaker assembly and electronics cabinet	TWS-293
<b>Options</b>	
Auxiliary activation / status control board for contact closure activation and status	AUXCS
Auxiliary activation board for contact closure	AUXIN
High efficient AC direct power supply unit	TWS-AC-PSU
GSM module	GV-GSM-RTU
Ethernet control / status interface	GV-IP
Giant Voice® Two way landline control / status monitoring	GV-LLM
High standard radios in both analogue and digital versions with wide frequency range within both VHF and UHF	TWS-RADIO
Omni-directional visual lighting	TWS-VISUALERT
Top mounted strobe light	TWS-TL31R
Giant Voice® Paging interface to interface TWS warning with existing paging systems	GV-PGINT
Intrusion alarm	TWS-INTRU
Solar power	TWS-SBC100
Two pairs of batteries	TWSBATT
Sun shield for electronic cabinet	TWS SUN SHIELD
Customized warning tones	GV-TONES

REV. H

# HSS



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

Three things you  
need to know in  
order to save lives

# ALERT INFORM DIRECT



**HSS**




**ENGINEERING<sup>®</sup>**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

## Standard tones

# IT'S IMPORTANT THAT THE PRODUCT YOU CHOOSE SOUNDS RIGHT

Comes with six standard warning tones

Tone	Tone symbol	Frequency	Period of time
Wail	~~~~~	410-675 Hz	4 sec / 1 sec
Alert	—	560 Hz	Steady
Hi/Lo	..... .....	465/650 Hz	8 sec / 8 sec
Attack	~~~~~	410-490 Hz	1 sec / 1 sec
Air Horn	..... .....	465-650 Hz	Modulated / 1.6 sec
Whoop	//////	300-465 Hz	3



**THIS IS WHAT YOU GET**

- Minimized cost of services and maintenance during the systems life span.
- Less power consumption (therefore greater energy autonomy and less accumulation of heat in the electronic components of the system).
- Working 24 / 7 / 365 (No need for thermal auto shutdown during vital emergencies).
- Lower weight and height give less wind load, smaller mast and lower installation costs.
- Comes with the most powerful speaker drivers in the market.
- Greater reliability thanks to important components such as amplifiers, drivers and batteries.



## Weights and measures



Modelo	SPL @ 1 m	SPL @ 30 m	System wattage Audio tone	Voice audio	Hight cm (inches)	Width cm (inches)	Weight kg (lbs.)
<b>TWS-291</b>	139 dB(C)	109 dB(C)	400	500	51.8 (20.4)	84.8 (33.4)	48.6 (107)
<b>TWS-292</b>	145 dB(C)	115 dB(C)	800	1000	83.6 (32.9)	84.8 (33.4)	70.8 (156)
<b>TWS-293</b>	149 dB(C)	119 dB(C)	1200	1500	115.3 (45.4)	84.8 (33.4)	93 (205)
<b>TWS-294</b>	151 dB(C)	121 dB(C)	1600	2000	147.1 (57.9)	84.8 (33.4)	115.3 (254)
<b>TWS-295</b>	153 dB(C)	123 dB(C)	2000	2500	178.8 (70.4)	84.8 (33.4)	137.5 (303)
<b>TWS-296</b>	155 dB(C)	125 dB(C)	2400	3000	210.6 (82.9)	84.8 (33.4)	164.2 (362)
<b>TWS-297</b>	156 dB(C)	126 dB(C)	2800	3500	242.3 (95.4)	84.8 (33.4)	186.5 (411)
<b>TWS-298</b>	157 dB(C)	127 dB(C)	3200	4000	274.1 (107.9)	84.8 (33.4)	208.7 (460)
<b>TWS-299</b>	158 dB(C)	128 dB(C)	3600	4500	305.8 (120.4)	84.8 (33.4)	230.9 (509)
<b>TWS-2910</b>	159 dB(C)	129 dB(C)	4000	5000	337.6 (132.9)	82.5 (32.5)	253.1 (558)

Cabinets	Hight cm (inches)	Width cm (inches)	Depth cm (inches)	Weight kg (lbs.)
<b>Electronics cabinet**</b> (TWS-291-295)	84.5 (33.3)	58.0 (22.8)	35.0 (13.8)	_*
<b>Electronics cabinet**</b> (TWS-296-2910)	169.0 (66.6)	58.0 (22.8)	35.0 (13.8)	_*

\* Less batteries. Two batteries: 12 V, sealed, lead-calcium, add 24 kg pr. battery. Less optional radio kit. Add 2.5 kg, if this option is selected.

Weight depends on model siren, verify weight in the technical data sheet of the specific equipment.

\*\* Equipment is configured for 120 Vac input power. Other input Voltages supplied upon request.

## Masts

# DESIGN – TOWER AND MAST

In accordance with local regulations and standards

---



**SIMPLE DESIGN**

**EASY TO INSTALL**



# ACCESSORIES FOR THE TWS-SERIES

**HIGH INTENSITY**

**VISUAL ALERT**

**SUPER-LED VISUALERT**



**SOLAR POWER SYSTEM**

**- DESIGNED FOR**

**HARSH ENVIRONMENTS**

The TWS-SBC200 is an all-inclusive solar power supply solution engineered to meet the power requirement of a TWS-Siren or Giant Voice® PA/GA system. High quality components and UV resistant cabling ensure years of performance even in harsh environments. Solar panels with tempered glass and excellent low light power output combined with 3-Stage intelligent PWM charging ensure high efficiency charging performance. Simple yet flexible aluminium mounting bracket for easy panel angling and installation.

## VISUAL LED WARNING

Enhance your Voice and Siren Mass Notification System with an optional visual component: The omni-directional visual lighting for TWS-290 & OA Series.

- VisuAlert Super-LED® mounts under a TWS-290 or omni-alert system
- Complete 360° highly effective LED warning
- VisuAlert illuminates with a designed flash pattern when siren is activated
- Cluster of six LED Whelen M6 Series warning lighthoods, 24 VDC
- Bracket supports are 300 Series aluminium alloy in a high strength
- All connections are waterproof

TWS-290 Series. Mass notification solution

# TWS-SERIES HAS THE BEST PERFORMANCE IN THE MARKET

**SPECIALISTS**

**IN CUSTOMIZED WARNING**

**SYSTEM SOLUTIONS**



## PERFORMANCE

- Maximum acoustic and energy performance
- Highest SPL sound output compared to power consumption
- True 360° omnidirectional sound propagation without any acoustic shadows
- Proven MTBF of more than 30,000 hours
- Lowest maintenance and service requirements
- Modular design made of robust fiber-reinforced polycarbonate
- High efficiency EZ-PULL™ speaker drivers
- Normal amplifier output power 400 Watts during tone / 500 Watts during voice
- Rated total max. output power 600 Watts total capacity per amplifier
- Intelligible pre-recorded or live voice messages in a wide area
- STI intelligibility index 0.98
- A single amplifier for each high efficiency speaker driver
- Tested for decades in all types of climate and environments with success

## COMMUNICATIONS

- Multiple technologies
- Simple or redundant
- VHF UHF digital radio
- Radio trunking
- GPRS 3G 4G
- Satellite BGAN M2M
- Broadband Networks
- IP Ethernet / Fiber Optic

## POWER

- Operation with AC, DC or solar energy
- Less power consumption = greater autonomy in emergencies
- Less excess heat in the electronics cabinet
- Minimum autonomy 30 minutes of continuous activation
- No need for thermal auto shutdown during vital emergency alerts
- Separate ventilated battery compartment

## TWS-290 Series cabinet

# A RELIABLE, LOW COST WARNING AND INFORMATION SYSTEM

---



### PERFORMANCE

- Maximum acoustic performance
- Six standard public warning tones - Wail, Whoop, Attack, Hi-Lo, Alert, Airhorn
- SI TEST®
- Lightning arrestor / Intrusion alarm
- Tone generator / Timer function
- Public address capability
- Local controls and/or remote controls

### DESIGN

- Two compartment natural finish aluminum cabinet with battery tray
- Battery switch
- Electronic siren controller
- Robust and light weight
- Lower weight and height
- Less wind load
- Easy to install
- High quality IP66 electronics cabinet



A 12 V valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) battery for the TWS-290 Public Warning System

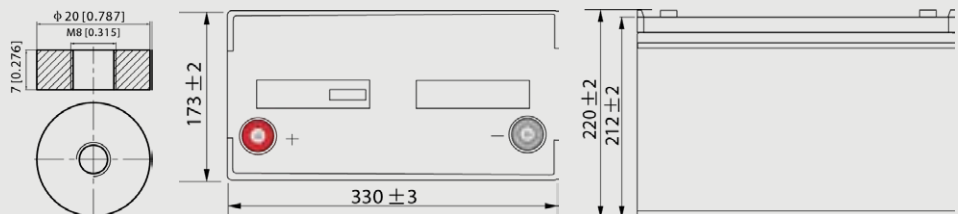


# TWS BATTERY 100-12

## TWSBATT 100-12

### TECHNICAL DATA

<b>Nominal voltage</b>	12 V	
<b>Nominal capacity (10HR)</b>	100 AH	
<b>Dimensions</b>	Length:	330 mm (12.99")
	Width:	173 mm (6.81")
	Container height:	212 mm (8.35")
	Total height:	220 mm (8.66")
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 28.5 kg (62.8 lbs.)	
<b>Terminal size</b>	Ø 8 mm	



# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
 Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
 Phone + 45 7022 8844  
 www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

**ENGINEERING®**  
 WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

## DISASTERS HAPPEN, BE PREPARED



### TRANSPORT INFORMATION

**UN No:** 2800

**Package group:** III

**IATA:** Not restricted for air transport-complies Special Revision A67

**IMO:** Not classified as of 1922

**Required Label** NON-SPILLABLE

Unrestricted U.S.A. shipment.  
Complies with IATA/ICAO Special Provision A67 for air transport.  
Recognized by DOT as "Dry Charge"  
49 CFR 171-189 for surface transport.  
Classified per MG Amendment 27 as a non-hazardous material for water transport.

### TECHNICAL DATA

<b>Terminal</b>	M8
<b>Container material</b>	ABS
<b>Rated capacity</b>	100.0 AH / 10.0 hr (10 hr, 1.80 V/cell, 25° C / 77°F)
<b>Max. discharge current</b>	1200 A (5s)
<b>Internal resistance</b>	Approx. 4.8 mΩ
<b>Temp. range</b>	Standard operating: -15–50° C (5–122°F) When paired with our temp. compensating charger TWS-BATTCH: Extended Operating: -35–60° C (-31–140°F)
<b>Cycle use</b>	Initial Charging Current less than 30.0 A. Voltage 14.4 V–15.0 V at 25° C (77°F) Temp. Coefficient -30 m V/° C
<b>Standby use</b>	No limit on Initial Charging Current Voltage 13.5 V–13.8 V at 25° C (77°F) Temp. Coefficient -20 mV/° C
<b>Capacity affected by temperature</b>	40° C (104°F) 25° C (77°F) 0° C (32°F) 103% 100% 86%
<b>Self-discharge</b>	TWSBATT 100-12 batteries may be stored for up to 6 months at 25° C (77°F) before a recharge is required. For higher temperatures the time interval will be shorter.

### ORDERING INFORMATION

**Product Description**

TWS Battery AGM 12 V 100 Ah

**Order No.**

TWSBATT 100-12

REV. F

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS


HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

*Solar power  
system designed  
for harsh  
environments*



## SOLAR POWER SYSTEM

### TWS-SBC200

The TWS-SBC200 is an all-inclusive solar power supply solution engineered to meet the power requirement of a TWS-Siren or Giant Voice® PA/GA system. High quality components and UV resistant cabling ensure years of performance even in harsh environments. Solar panels with tempered glass and excellent low light power output combined with 3-Stage intelligent PWM charging ensure high efficiency charging performance. Simple yet flexible aluminium mounting bracket for easy panel angling and installation.

#### FEATURES

- Panel performance guarantee, 90% for 10 years & 80% for 25 years
- Panels with tempered glass and class A cells with + 3% plus tolerance
- Panels feature bypass diodes for shadow optimization at serial connection
- 3-Stage intelligent PWM charging, bulk, boost/equalize, float
- Battery status LED indicator
- Extensive electronic protection – over voltage, over discharge, reverse polarity etc.
- Mounting bracket made of EN AW-5754 aluminium ensures extremely high corrosion resistance
- Solar feed cable featuring MC4 connectors is Weather/UV-resistant acc. to HD 605/A1, halogen-free and flame-retardant

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk





**DISASTERS  
HAPPEN, BE  
PREPARED**



## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

Solar power system 2 x 12V  
100 Watt panels

### Order No.

TWS-SBC200

REV. E

## TECHNICAL DATA PER SOLAR PANEL

<b>Power</b>	100 Watt*
<b>Panel voltage</b>	12 Volt
<b>Number of bypass diodes</b>	2 pcs.
<b>Max. power current (Imp)</b>	5.68 A
<b>Open circuit voltage (Voc)</b>	21.6 V
<b>Short circuit current (Isc)</b>	6.14 A
<b>Max power tolerance</b>	-/+ 3%
<b>Dimensions</b> (pr. panel)	Width: 1200 mm (47,24") Height: 540 mm (21,26") Depth: 35 mm (1,37")
<b>Panel weight</b> (pr. panel)	8.2 kg

## INCLUDES

- 2 x 100 Watt\* solar panels
- PWM solar charge controller
- TWS/GV power supply interface
- Mounting bracket for solar panels (weight 9.1 kg)
- Siren controller interface cable
- 15 meter solar feed cable

\* Solar panels can be with higher power output for customer requirements.

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

# HSS



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



*Basic unit incl.  
GV-EMS  
software*

## CORE UNIT GV-CORE-RM3

The Giant Voice® Core Unit serves as the integration platform for Giant Voice® products as well as auxiliary components. It connects directly to the Giant Voice® Distributed Communication Network (GV-DCN). All components are chosen to ensure the highest reliability reducing maintenance to a minimum.

The Giant Voice® Core Unit features a multi I/O communications interface, which enables easy connection and control of classic analogue DTMF systems as well as digital radios, PA-microphone, LAN and fibre etc. Moreover, it has a built-in audio distribution interface, which provides connection to devices such as CD-Players, PA systems etc. and from here distributed throughout the control interface.

The built-in dual voltage 115/230 VAC power supply combined with the multi I/O communications interface ensures a high level of flexibility for installation.

### FEATURES

- Highly Versatile Communications Interface
- Advanced siren system fault monitoring and control features via GV-EMS software
- Backwards compatible TWS, Giant Voice and Whelen DTMF Control Interface
- Dual Voltage 115/230 VAC
- 19" 3U cabinet design
- CD-Players, PA systems etc distributed throughout the control interface
- Components chosen to ensure the highest reliability

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



## ALERTS PEOPLE TO POSSIBLE DANGER



### ORDERING INFORMATION

#### Product Description

Core Unit

#### Order No.

GV-CORE-RM3

#### Product Description

Giant Voice® EMS

#### Order No.

GV-EMS

#### Option

#### Product Description

Telecom System Interface

#### Order No.

GV-PABX-A (Analogue)

GV-PABX-D (Digital)

REV. C

### TECHNICAL DATA

<b>DTMF Port</b>	1
<b>Digital Communications Port</b>	1
<b>Optional/Audio Port</b>	1
<b>LAN Ports</b>	2
<b>Display Port</b>	1
<b>DVI-I</b>	1
<b>COM Ports</b>	2
<b>USB Ports</b>	7
<b>PABX Expansion Slots</b>	1
<b>Operating temperature</b>	-10° C – +60° C
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 19" (48,26 cm) Height: 3U Depth: 32,25 cm (12.69")
<b>Weight</b>	5,35 kg
<b>Dual Voltage</b>	115/230 VAC
<b>Max power consumption</b>	100 Watt



### OPTIONS

**GV-PABX-A** Telephone Branch Exchange Interface-Analogue

**GV-PABX-D** Telephone Branch Exchange Interface-Digital

Please contact us for more details.

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



*A comprehensive  
and flexible  
emergency  
system*



## EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM GV-EMS

The system is scalable i.e., the user can access all data and information, or activate components on the system from any GV-CORE unit connected to the system.

The software can be operated from one or more screens displaying different menus simultaneously. Menus are pre-designed for touch screen operation. The system can be configured to meet your specific needs, such as predefined warning tones, pre-recorded messages and sequences, as well as customer-selected maps of the area.

The GV-EMS is a comprehensive and flexible Emergency System providing easy and understandable information that enables the user to make the right decisions and to react within seconds.

The GV-EMS has been developed to meet the customers' need for precise and accurate information at hand, when vital decisions must be made.

The software is delivered preinstalled on the GV-CORE unit that serves as the platform for the Giant Voice® Distributed Communication Network (GV-DCN).

The system is easy to use with its straightforward logic - simply select the system components on the map and then choose your action from one of the on-screen menus.

You can also add predefined sequences to the system by assigning sequences to the programmable activation keys. A sequence is defined by any specific warning priority, such as an alert by tones and inform by a public announcement.

You will not encounter any language barriers and the user interface can be modified with easily recognizable icons and colors.

## HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



# GIANT VOICE®



EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

**ALERTS  
PEOPLE TO  
POSSIBLE  
DANGER**



## INTEGRATION TO

- SCADA
- CCTV
- Fire System
- Warning Systems and more

## MAP FEATURES

- Zoom and pan capability
- Orientation map
- Predefined group selection
- Printable maps

## ACTIVATION FEATURES

- Activation of selected system components
- Activation status display
- Activation accept allows to preview the command before transmission

## SERVICE FEATURES

- Status data request from selected system components (for example: battery status, speaker driver or amplifier failure, AC Power, cabinet temperature)
- Real-time status monitoring

## ANALYSIS FEATURES

- User defined analysis criteria (Period, Selected Sirens, Command Type etc.)
- Data base of status logs with capability of storing information
- Export data function enabling export of selected data to e.g. Microsoft Excel

## FEATURES

- IP-Broadcast
- Unlimited amount of programmable predefined sequences
- Supports colour coded system components icon
- Configuration, monitoring and control capability of all system components in real-time
- Integration platform for a variety of components such as public address, general alarm sirens, PABX, sensors, strobe lights, text displays, SMS text message and more
- Individual Log-On ID supporting differentiation between operators, service personnel and administrators
- Supports GV-DCN network structure

## OPTIONS

- PABX Integration Additional screens
- 10 digit DTMF protocol
- Email Warning
- Giant Voice® Radio Base Station (UHF/VHF)
- Rack cabinet enclosure as pr. customer requirements
- SMS Warning

# HSS

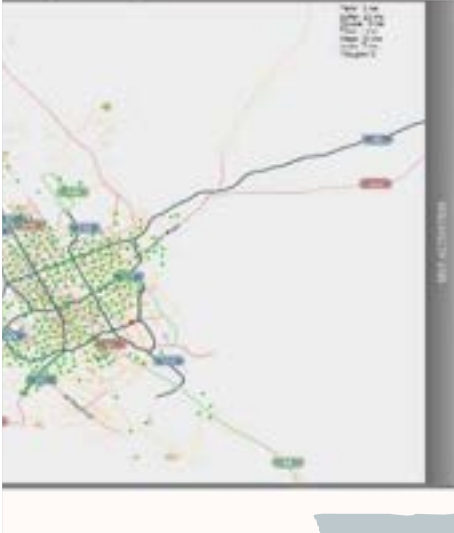


**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



*A 19" touch screen for the Giant Voice® emergency management system*



## TOUCH SCREEN GV-TS19

The GV-TS19 Touch Screen is based on projected capacitive technology that, thanks to a glass overlay covering the screen, guarantees high durability, scratch-resistance and perfect picture performance. The touch function remains unaffected even if the glass is scratched.

A solid and steady base supports the Touch Screen with an adjustable stand offering full 90 degree positioning angles. Menu Buttons are located on the side of the screen, that can be locked to prevent tampering and includes a handy function to deactivate the Touch Screen for cleaning.

In addition, the edge-to-edge glass design creates an eye-catching finish, with high light transmission guaranteeing perfect picture clarity and brilliant colours. Analogue and Digital inputs are available for flexible connectivity along with a USB port for the Touch Interface.

### SPECIFICATIONS

<b>Power supply</b>	AC 100 - 240 V, 50 / 60 Hz
<b>Power supply unit</b>	Internal
<b>Power consumption</b>	25 W typical; max. 2 W in power management mode
<b>Power management</b>	VESA DPMS
<b>Analog input connector</b>	VGA
<b>Digital input connector</b>	HDMI Display Port
<b>Inputs</b>	USB (for touch connectivity)
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 432 mm Height: 391 mm Depth: 219 mm Weight: 6,9 kg

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



## ALERTS PEOPLE TO POSSIBLE DANGER



### ORDERING INFORMATION

#### Product Description

Giant Voice® 19" Touch Screen

#### Order No.

GV-TS19

#### Options

#### Product Description

Rackmount Bracket  
for 19" Touch Screen

#### Order No.

GV-TSRMB

REV. F

### DISPLAY CHARACTERISTICS

<b>Panel</b>	IPS LED
<b>Glass hardness</b>	7H minimum
<b>Display area</b>	Height: 302.0 mm (11.89") Width: 377.5 mm (14.86") Response time 5 ms / 14 ms
<b>Contrast</b>	1000: 1 with touch panel
<b>Brightness</b>	225 cd/m <sup>2</sup> with touch panel
<b>Viewing zone</b>	Horizontal/vertical: 178° / 178° Right/left: 89° / 89°; up/down: 89° / 89°
<b>Display colour</b>	16.7 million
<b>Pixel pitch</b>	0.2928 mm
<b>Native resolution</b>	1280 x 1024 (1.3 megapixel)
<b>Horizontal sync</b>	31 - 80 KHz
<b>Vertical sync</b>	50 - 75 Hz
<b>Synchronization</b>	Separate Sync
<b>Aspect ratio</b>	5 : 4
<b>Light transmittance</b>	90%

# HSS

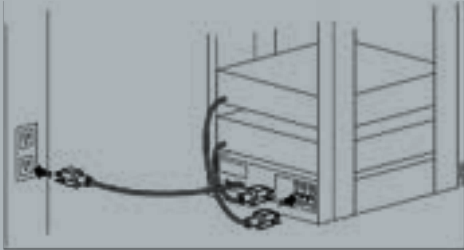
HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

Protect your  
Giant Voice® System  
from power outages

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



## UPS GV-UPS1500

The GV-UPS contains a battery pack that ensures operation of critical components in your PA/GA system in case of a power outage. The module is designed specifically for use together with the Giant Voice® PA/GA product range and is easily installed in racks along with these components.

The GV-UPS is equipped with 4 x IEC 230 VAC outlets and support loads 900 Watt. For extended battery capacity, more units can be added.

### FEATURES

- 2U rack case with rack rails
- 4 x IEC 230 VAC outlets
- Supports 900 Watt / 1500 VA
- True Sinewave output (THD<3%)
- High efficiency up to 92%
- Thermostatically controlled fan

# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS





# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



**DISASTERS  
HAPPEN, BE  
PREPARED**



## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

1500 VA UPS

### Order No.

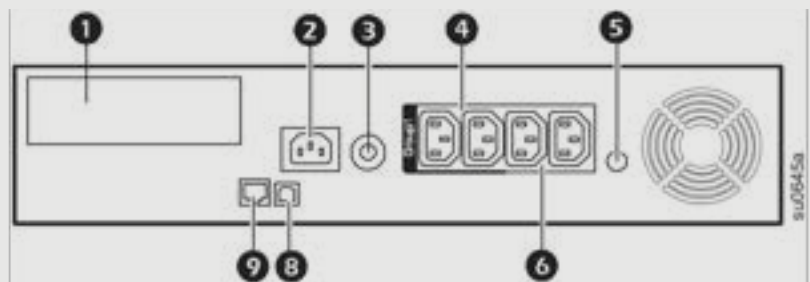
GV-UPS1500

REV. E

## SPECIFICATIONS

<b>Rated AC power output</b>	900 Watt
<b>Number of 230VAC outlets</b>	4
<b>Transfer time</b>	10 ms
<b>Power supply</b>	230 VAC, 50/60 Hz
<b>Battery Volt-Amp-Hour capacity</b>	336
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 43.2 cm (17.0") Height: 2U (8.6 cm) Dept: 47.7 cm (18.8") Weight: 28.6 kg
<b>Operating temperature</b>	0 - 40° C

1500 VA 230 VAC



# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

*The rack  
is a solution for  
your emergency  
warning system*



## RACK GV-RACK

The GV-RACK incorporates common features, such as adjustable 19-inch mounting angles and jacking feet, the GV-RACK range offers a configurable top panel system that provides an open base design to promote trouble free service and maintenance.

The GV-RACK is designed to provide the flexibility needed to suit all requirements of your Giant Voice® Emergency Management System. The rack can be fitted with options such as a top active fan and SMART UPS.

The GV-RACK is built to high quality standards.

### FEATURES

- Environmental protection rating IP20
- Adjustable 19-inch mounting rails
- Upgradable plain top panels
- Open base design
- Glazed front door and plain steel rear door
- Lockable lift off side panels
- Jacking feet fitted as standard
- Cable inlet apertures in both top and bottom
- Key lock on sides and rear. Key and handle lock on front



# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



## HSS ADVANCED WARNING SYSTEMS

### ORDERING INFORMATION

#### Product Description

RACK

#### Order No.

GV-RACK-15U  
GV-RACK-22U  
GV-RACK-36U  
GV-RACK-42U

#### Product Description

Top active fan

#### Order No.

GV-RACK-FAN

#### Product Description

SMART UPS

#### Order No.

UPS 1500VA  
UPS 3000VA\*

\* Requires a rack depth of 1000 mm  
REV. F

### TECHNICAL DATA

<b>Air Flow</b>	95 -115 CFM			
<b>Fan Speed</b>	2700 - 3100 rpm			
<b>Noise level</b>	44-49 db/A			
<b>Operating Voltage</b>	220-240V, 50-60 Hz			
<b>Complies with</b>	IEC 297-1			
<b>Dimensions</b>	<b>15 U</b>	<b>22 U</b>	<b>36 U</b>	<b>42 U</b>
Width	600 mm	600 mm	600 mm	800 mm
Height	815 mm	1120mm	1728 mm	2400 mm
Depth	680 mm	800 mm	800 mm	800 mm
<b>Color</b>	Light Grey NCS 1502-Y			

### OPTIONS

- Smart UPS 1500 VA, 3000 VA\*
- Other dimensions and colors are available on request

# HSS

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

Satellite &  
Cellular Communication  
Solutions

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

## DUAL MODE BGAN M2M

This terminal is the only Inmarsat BGAN M2M terminal to offer dual mode operation, which provides unique flexibility and M2M data communication cost-control, as it ensures the most cost effective communication service that can be chosen, depending on location.

Securing continuity of M2M IP data transfer, often originating in hard to reach, remote locations, dual-mode operation delivers significant fail-over capabilities with automatic switching between BGAN and cellular networks.

For organizations transferring critical real time data within their M2M networks, the dual mode can provide unmatched service availability. The terminal is well suited for bespoke M2M solutions such as IP SCADA for data backhaul, asset tracking, real time surveillance and remote telemetry.

## SATELITE SOLUTION

### Dual Mode BGAN M2M & Cellular terminal GV-SAT

HSS Engineering has designed a satellite & cellular communication solution ideal for monitoring, activation and interaction with the TWS Siren and GV-EMS systems. These systems function in areas with a lack of communication due to geographical conditions, using BGAN M2M technology terminal designed to operate on both Inmarsat BGAN (Broadband Global Area Network) and cellular 2G/3G/LTE networks. GV-SAT delivers continuous and reliable connectivity for critical monitoring and control applications.

BGAN M2M services use Inmarsat BGAN to provide a reliable, global, two-way IP data service. It is designed to connect monitoring and control applications in remote, unmanned locations, providing asset visibility and management control. By combining BGAN M2M with cellular connectivity in the same terminal, GV-SAT gives users the opportunity to choose the best carrier for any location.



# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



## FEATURES

- GV-SAT is BGAN M2M certified and BGAN Class 2 Type Approved for services such as BGAN Link
- Lightweight and rugged IP66 design ensures durability for outside mounting - no enclosure needed
- Polemount included in the package
- Simple to set up and operate
- Versatile power options with both Power over Ethernet (PoE) and 10-32 VDC input
- Two cable glands for easy installation of standard power and Ethernet cables into the back housing
- Remote management of the terminal via SMS including configuration, debugging, and access to the web interface
- The optional cellular 2G/3G/LTE Modem is an integrated part of the design
- Automatic failover between BGAN and the cellular network ensures continuous connectivity
- Connectivity in North, Central & South America, Europe, Asia, Africa and more

## TECHNICAL DATA

<b>Dimensions</b> (H x W x D)	Mainn Unit: 202 x 202 x 51.8 mm
<b>Weight</b>	Total: 1.4 kg
<b>Standard IP</b>	Up to 464 kbps
<b>Streaming IP</b>	32, 64, 128 kbps (not in M2M mode)
<b>Connectivity</b>	1 x Micro USB interface (for EXPLORER 3G modem) 1 x RJ45 Ethernet interface with PoE 1 x 8 pin Ethernet interface 1 x 3 pin for I/O 1 x 2 pin for DC power input
<b>Operating Temperature</b>	-40 °C – +75° C Storage
<b>Temperature</b>	-55 °C – +80° C Ingress Protection IP66
<b>DC Input range</b>	10.5-32 VDC Languages: ENG, FR, DE, ES, RU, JP and CN
<b>DC input range</b>	10.5-32 VDC Pin Connector
<b>PoE input</b>	Poe+ IEEE 802.3 at Type 2 Class 4 via RJ45 Connector

## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

Giant Voice® Satellite Solution

### Order No.

TWS-SAT

NOTE: The TWS-SAT Solution Frequency to be determined at order.  
Please contact HSS Engineering for further information

REV. D

# HSS

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

# EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

**Are you sure?**  
**Do you want to activate the alert?**  
Please confirm below

**Confirm**

**Cancel**

## Fast activation

### Choose area on map

Rectangle selection

Circle selection

Free selection

Select all

Save

Delete

### 2. Choose communication



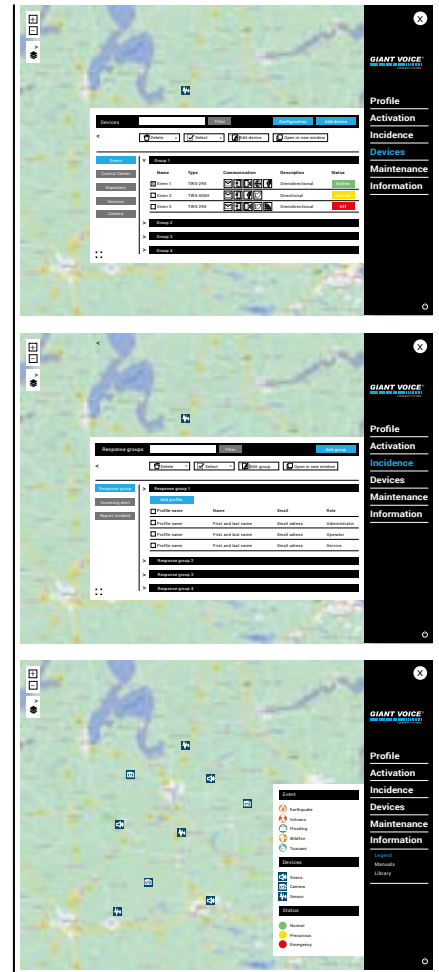
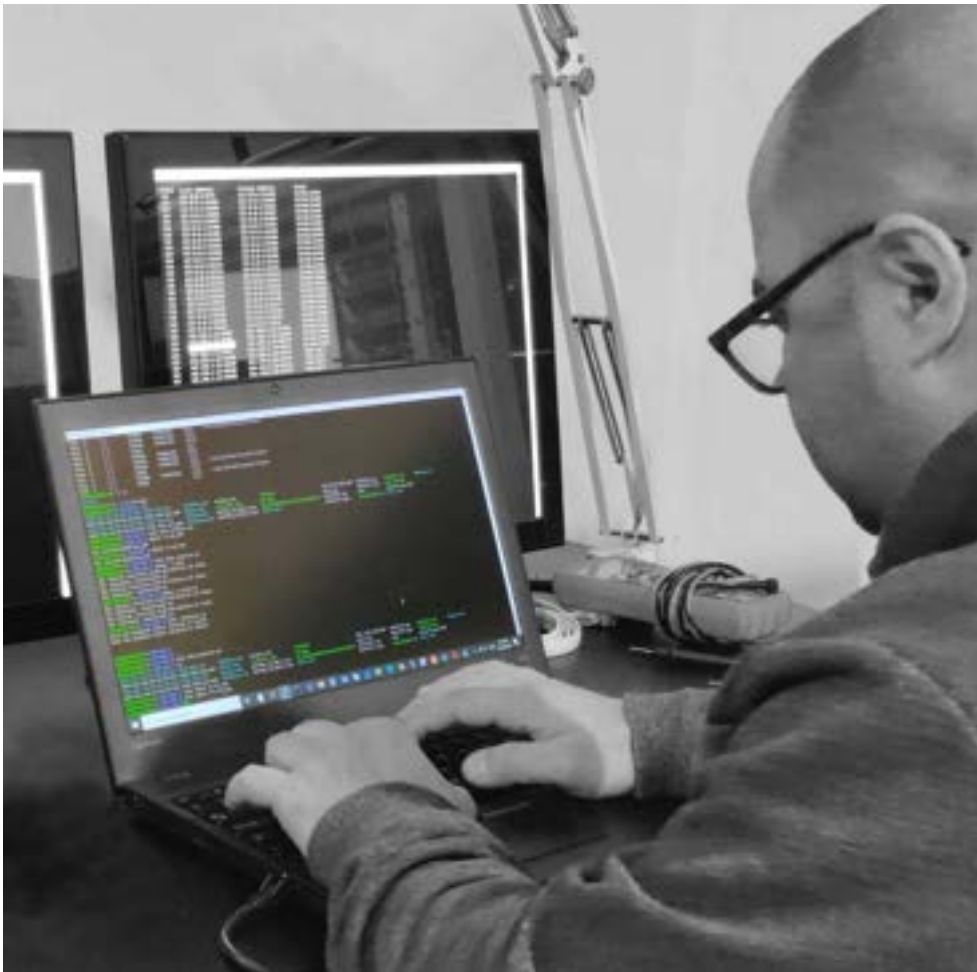
Activate

**HSS**



**ENGINEERING**<sup>®</sup>  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

# WE CUSTOMIZE COMPREHENSIVE AND FLEXIBLE EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



The GV-EMS is a comprehensive and flexible Emergency System providing easy and understandable information that enables the user to make the right decisions and to react within seconds.

The GV-EMS has been developed to meet the customer's need for precise and accurate information at hand, when vital decisions must be made. GV-EMS network structure is designed in a flat hierarchical structure. Working independently or in groups.

The software is delivered preinstalled on the GV-CORE unit that serves as the platform for the Giant Voice® Distributed Communication Network (GV-DCN).

The system is easy to use with its straightforward logic - simply select the system components on the map and then choose your action from one of the on-screen menus.

You can also add predefined sequences to the system by assigning sequences to the programmable activation keys. A sequence is defined by any specific warning priority, such as an alarm (tones) or a public information.

You will not encounter any language barriers and the user interface can be modified with easily recognizable icons and colors.

# GV-EMS. Emergency Management System

**GV-EMS MEETS  
INTERNATIONAL  
STANDARDS AND IT IS  
COMPATIBLE TO ANY  
COMMON ALERT  
PROTOCOL**



## INTEGRATION TO ANY DEVICE

- Sensoring systems
- CCTV systems
- Fire detection Systems
- Weather Station and more
- Unlimited amount of devices can be integrated

## MAP FEATURES

- Predefined static map
- Zoom capability
- Rectangle, circle, groups and free selection of devices
- Map formats: JPEG, PNG, SHP, DBF, JSON, GEOjson and SHX format

## ACTIVATION FEATURES

- Activation of selected system components
- Activation status display
- Activation accept allows to preview the command before transmission

## SERVICE FEATURES

- Status data request from selected system components (for example: status, speaker driver or amplifier failure, AC Power, cabinet temperature)
- Real-time status monitoring for any type of RTU device or repeater station

## ANALYSIS FEATURES

- User defined analysis criteria (Period, Selected Sirens, Command Type etc.)
- Data base of status logs with capability of storing information in any format
- Export data function enabling export of selected data to e.g. Microsoft Excel

## FEATURES

- Live voice message through IP-Broadcasting, radio VHF/UHF, etc.
- Unlimited number of programmable predefined sequences
- Predesigned menus for touch screen operation
- Interactive icons and symbols
- Configuration, monitoring and control capability of all system components in real-time
- Integration platform for a variety of components such as public address, general alarm sirens, PABX, sensors, strobe lights, text displays, SMS text message and more
- Individual Log-In ID supporting differentiation between operators, service personnel and administrators in order to secure the system
- Supports GV-DCN network structure
- GV-EMS can manage and monitor devices by any type of communication such as (VHF/UHF) Radio, IP Ethernet, BGAN/Vsat Satellite, GPRS 3G/4G mobile network, EWBS, Digital terrestrial television
- Predefined communication channel management

## OPTIONS

- PABX Integration Additional screens
- 10 digit DTMF protocol
- Mobile App
- Repeater station management
- Rack cabinet enclosure as pr. customer requirements
- Mass notification through SMS, Email and IOS / Android compatible mobile App





A full range of high-quality products!

# WE SUPPORT YOU ALL THE WAY

A warning system from HSS Engineering® provides a complete alerting and notification system solution that utilizes a variety of technologies, software and hardware that enable municipalities, defense installations and industrial facilities to maintain the safety and security of their personnel and the general public and industrial facilities to maintain the safety and security of their personnel and the general public.

**MANUFACTURER**

**OF CUSTOMIZED WARNING**

**SYSTEM SOLUTIONS**

At HSS Engineering® we develop, manufacture, deliver, maintain, customize and assemble Giant Voice® and TWS warning system solutions for tailored warning solutions. Our extensive product range and consultancy services ensure that the customer receives a warning solution that addresses their specific safety requirements in a cost-effective and timely manner.

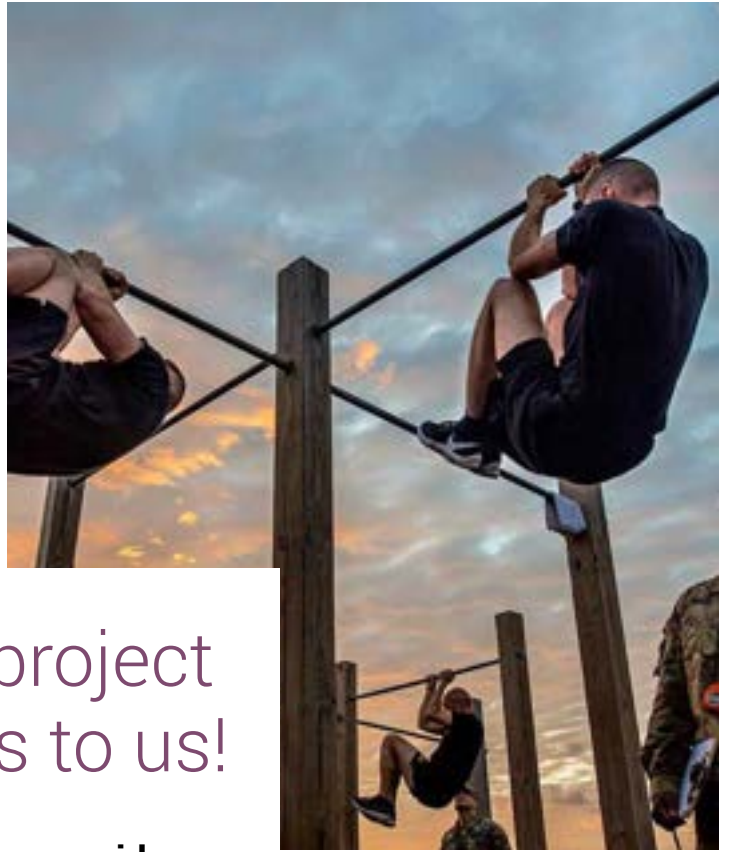
We have challenged our engineers to develop the best technical solutions for a variety of systems. This is why HSS Engineering® currently has an unmatched reputation of providing the best warning system solutions to customers in a global context and with a local perspective.

We have worked successfully with a wide range of customers across North America, Central America, South America, the Middle East, Asia, Europe, and Oceania to provide cost-effective, innovative and customized warning solutions. Throughout our 40 years in business, HSS Engineering® has successfully delivered a variety of projects featuring diverse process technologies to clients around the world.



We are specialists with an exclusive dedication in developing, customizing, manufacturing, delivering and maintaining Public Warning Systems (PWS), Emergency Management Systems (EMS), Public Address & General Alarm systems (PA/GA), defense warning systems as well as turnkey systems.

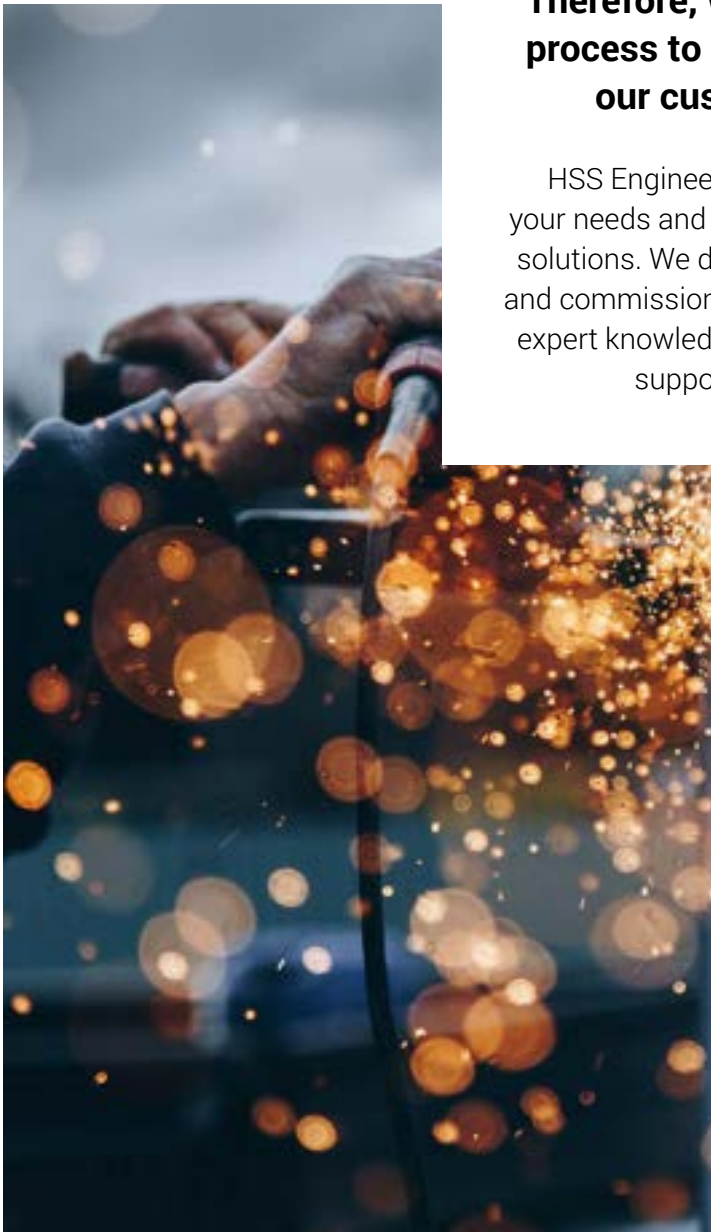




Every project matters to us!

**Therefore, we provide a process to satisfy all of our customers.**

HSS Engineering® analyzes your needs and provides the best solutions. We do the installation and commissioning and apply our expert knowledge, and offer you support 24/7.

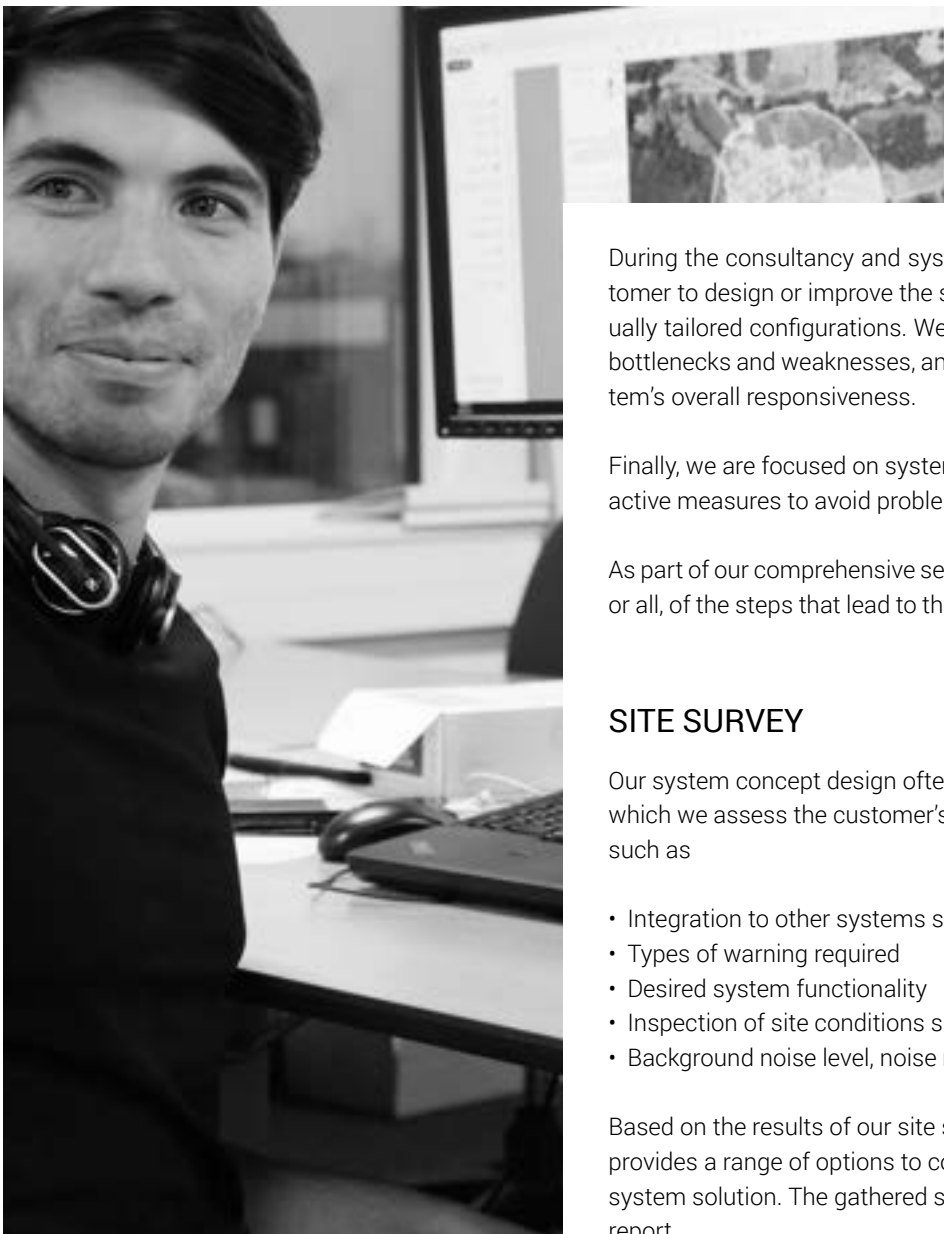


Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

# WE ANALYSE YOUR NEEDS

---

**A warning system from HSS Engineering® provides a complete alerting and notification system solution that utilizes a variety of technologies, software and hardware that enable municipalities, defense installations and industrial facilities to maintain the safety and security of their personnel and the general public and industrial facilities to maintain the safety and security of their personnel and the general public.**



During the consultancy and system design service our engineers help the customer to design or improve the system performance and give advice on individually tailored configurations. We further help our customers to identify system bottlenecks and weaknesses, and suggest courses of action to improve the system's overall responsiveness.

Finally, we are focused on system reliability allowing our customers to take proactive measures to avoid problems, now and into the future.

As part of our comprehensive service, our engineers can be a collaborator in any, or all, of the steps that lead to the design of a new customized warning solution.

## SITE SURVEY

Our system concept design often starts with a detailed site survey during which we assess the customer's requirements for the warning system solution such as

- Integration to other systems such as fire and gas, public address, PABX, etc
- Types of warning required
- Desired system functionality
- Inspection of site conditions such as hazardous areas, type of dangers, etc
- Background noise level, noise mapping and acoustic analysis

Based on the results of our site survey, the feedback from our engineers provides a range of options to consider in planning and designing the warning system solution. The gathered survey information is collected into a site survey report.

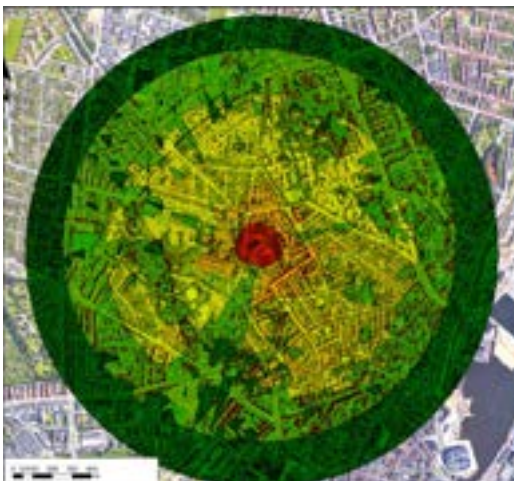
Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

---

# THE DEVELOPMENT OF A RELIABLE SOLUTION

---

Several tools and processes are taken into consideration when the HSS Engineering® team is in the process of advising on and designing a system that can resolve all of our customers' warning needs.



## INPUT

Topography, background noise level, information on buildings and structures, siren type, siren output, siren location and siren cluster elevation

## SOUNDPLAN

Analysis and calculation

## OUTPUT

Graphical presentation, showing siren sound propagation

### Action Matrix

The action matrix is a tool that helps identify the types of warning required, their initiation procedure and the area that should be covered by the system. The action matrix procedure requires careful planning and is developed in close corporation with the customers.

### Acoustics Simulations and Measurements

To ensure that the warning sound propagation will actually cover the relevant areas, HSS Engineering® offers the services of performing field test measurements. The noise measurements serve as the basis for a noise mapping and acoustical analysis. Creating a noise map gives a comprehensive overview, that in a graphical manner, helps identify weak spots in the sound coverage provided by the warning system.

The sound propagation coverage is compared to the sound levels and coverage areas to ensure that these requirements correspond to the International and local standards and regulations given for the area. The HSS Engineering® team can carry out acoustics simulations and measurements for indoor and outdoor environments.

### System Concept Design

Acoustics simulations and measurements can along with the action matrix and other inputs gathered during the site survey be used to make decisions on where and how to install the system. Further more they help designing the interfaces to other external systems.

The system concept design is often kept at a modular level to ensure that the comprehensive overview of the suggested design concept is clear prior to manufacturing and further documentation.

### Technical Solution

At HSS Engineering® we go through a thorough process to ensure that we create, the most optimized solutions that are required to meet our customers' needs. We provide a detailed technical and economical explanation of the customers' solutions that can be adjusted according to the customers' feedback.



Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

# WE PROVIDE THE BEST SOLUTIONS

---

We develop and provide the most reliable warning solutions.  
We are able to customize the solution to meet our customers' requirements.  
We handle documentation ranging from simple manufacturing test sheets to construction drawings and wiring diagrams.

## FACTORY

## ACCEPTANCE TEST

Factory Acceptance Test (FAT) is conducted to determine and document, that the system hardware and software operate according to the customers' specifications.

At HSS Engineering® we consider the factory acceptance test (FAT) to be a very important milestone to;

- Determine and document that hardware / software work according to specifications
- Compare the configuration of the system according to the drawings and documentation
- Test and review the customers' entire operation so that it meets your requirements
- Changes can be identified and incorporated more easily at this stage
- The customer gets the guarantee that each component has been thoroughly tested and verified



Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

# WE DO THE INSTALLATION AND COMMISSIONING

---

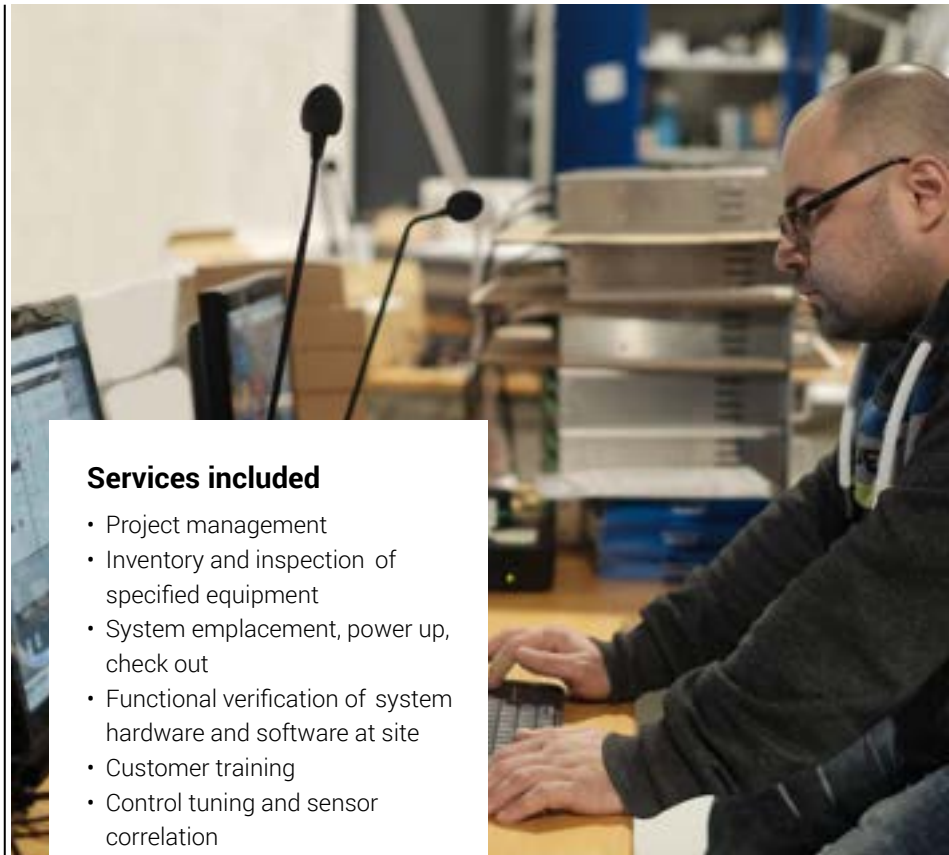
**Our project managers, engineers  
and technicians are all seasoned professionals familiar with local  
and international industry standards pertaining  
to emergency system installations.**

One of the things that sets HSS Engineering® apart from our competitors is that we deploy our own engineers on-site all over the world - including war zones. Our project managers, engineers and technicians are all seasoned professionals familiar with local and International industry standards pertaining to emergency system installation practices for the military, industry and public sectors around the globe. This ensures that we have direct control over the installation process and the ability to fully install, align, test, troubleshoot and commission the system.

Our field engineers receive training in all products each supplementing their specialized competences. This ensures that all field engineers share a common understanding of the system functionality while still maintaining the specialist skills within the deployed crew.

To ensure that all aspects are taken into consideration prior to installation a commissioning plan is laid out between the project manager and the customer to exactly define the system expectations, set a schedule and engage and commit all team members. The effort will be supported by providing the test equipment and knowledge necessary to leave the customer with the assurance that each component has been thoroughly tested and verified.

All of these factors give HSS Engineering® the ability to deliver a full turnkey project in the same high standard every time - anywhere in the world. Nevertheless, we also cooperate with local expert companies to deliver the best solutions.



## Services included

- Project management
- Inventory and inspection of specified equipment
- System emplacement, power up, check out
- Functional verification of system hardware and software at site
- Customer training
- Control tuning and sensor correlation
- Performance verification and documentation

## Benefits

- Streamlined process
- Smoother installations
- Improved quality
- Faster start up at lower cost
- Improved efficiency
- Optimized system performance
- Significantly better end result



Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

# WE TRANSFER OUR KNOWLEDGE

---

HSS Engineering® offers private courses for customers and business representatives all around the globe, who are looking for a detailed explanation of our delivered system, technological solutions and services.



We educate our staff thoroughly.

**At HSS Engineering® we are passionate learning facilitators and we target our training courses at the level of the participants.**

**Some of the course topics include:**

- Company overview
- System concept overview
- Communication
- Giant Voice® – Emergency management system training
- Discussing different system scenarios
- SPL standards
- System maintenance
- System troubleshooting

We have custom courses for all customers based on their focus areas. Our training courses are held at our headquarters in Denmark as well as on site, depending of our customers' needs.

Within the HSS Engineering® training, we use exercises and activities in which our participants can get practically involved. As a result, the participants gain knowledge of how the system operates.



# We have divided our training classes into 4 levels

- Operators training
- Basic service and maintenance
- Advanced service and maintenance
- System administrator/ administration

All classes are complemented with an official HSS Engineering® training class certificate stating the level and time of training.



Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

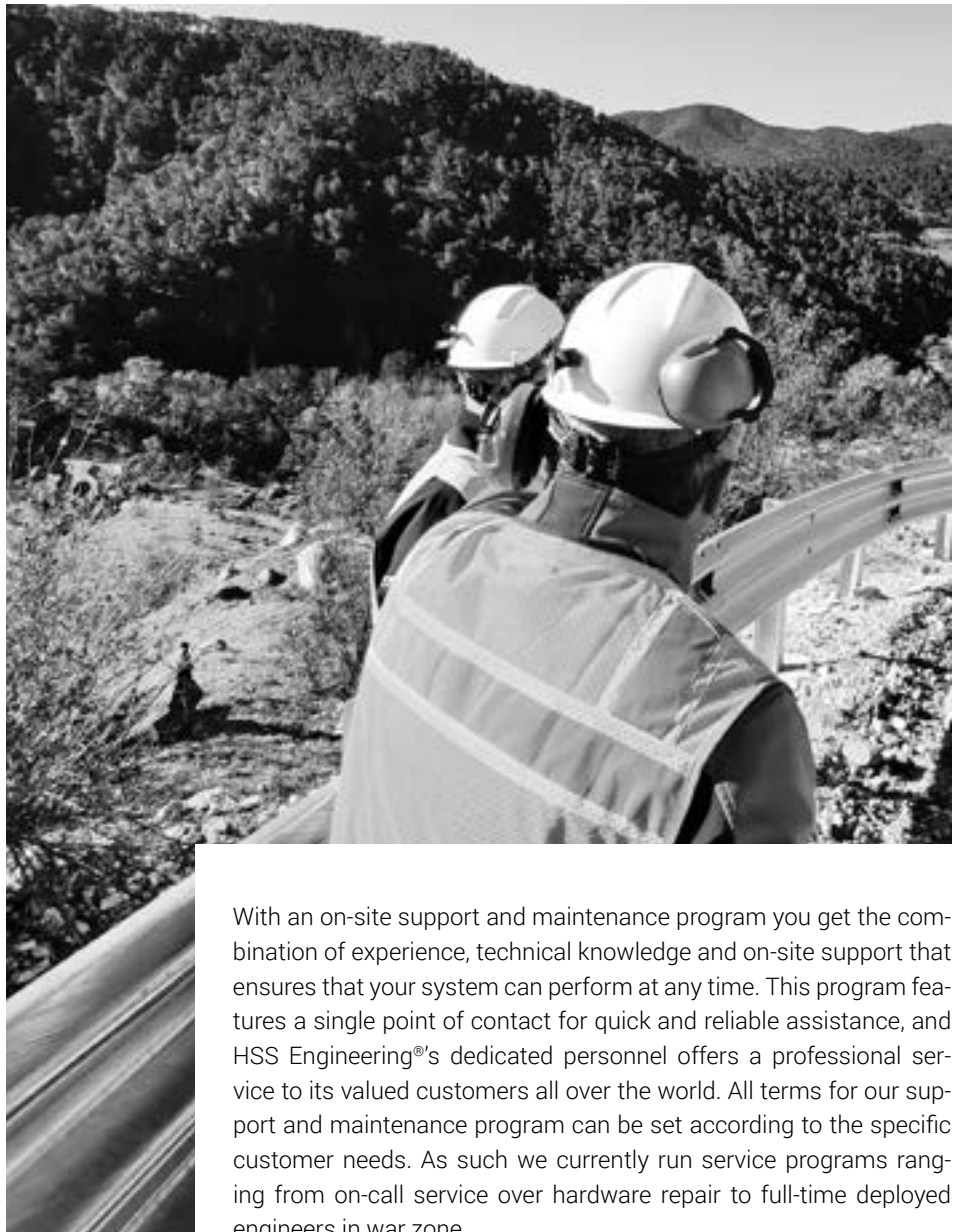
# WE OFFER

## SUPPORT 24-7

---

**Our support and maintenance program can provide both reactive (emergency support) services and proactive (preventative maintenance) services. We currently run service programs ranging from on-call service for hardware repair to full-time deployed engineers in war zones.**

Warning systems supplied by HSS Engineering® have a two-year warranty period and require very low maintenance. However, even after the warranty period has expired, ongoing support and technical assistance is available. HSS Engineering®'s support and maintenance program can provide both reactive (emergency support) services and proactive (planned preventative maintenance) services.



With an on-site support and maintenance program you get the combination of experience, technical knowledge and on-site support that ensures that your system can perform at any time. This program features a single point of contact for quick and reliable assistance, and HSS Engineering®'s dedicated personnel offers a professional service to its valued customers all over the world. All terms for our support and maintenance program can be set according to the specific customer needs. As such we currently run service programs ranging from on-call service over hardware repair to full-time deployed engineers in war zone.

Alerting and notification solutions step by step.

# KEEP YOUR SYSTEM RUNNING

---

## Planned preventative maintenance

A preventative maintenance contract with HSS Engineering® provides periodic checks and alignment to keep the system operating at published specification levels and helps prevent failures.

During our preventative maintenance, in addition to the standard maintenance, we also examine all con-sumable and possible failure parts of the system and report on their condition. Rectification can then be made avoiding a potentially costly and disruptive system failure.



## Reactive service

With a reactive service contract with HSS Engineering®, we take responsibility for the full repair by authorized HSS Engineering® personnel if a piece of equipment should fail.

In a standard reactive service contract, you send the failed equipment to us for repair or replacement and we will return it to you within the agreed maximum time scale. The reactive service contract can also contain a 24-hour-hotline e-mail and telephone service for quick and reliable assistance.

## On-site service and maintenance

When the preventative and reactive maintenance services are not sufficient for your warning system solution, we also provide an on-site support and maintenance contract.

The on-site service and maintenance contract is tailored specifically to your needs and requirements. We offer every level of service from an on-call service to a full time deployed engineer 24 hours a day, 7 days a week and 365 days a year.



- Headquarters
- Sales Departments
- Regional Sales

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION  
PLEASE CONTACT OUR SPECIALISTS  
FROM YOUR REGION

**ASIA**

Jamal Kaddoura / Business Development Manager  
P +45 8736 2486 / jmk@hss.dk

**AFRICA**

Jamil Mahmoud / Business Development Manager  
P +45 8736 2489 / jkd@hss.dk

**USA / OCEANIA**

James Sturzenegger / Business Development Manager  
P +45 8736 2493 / P +1 404-382-0025 / jms@hss.dk

**LATIN AMERICA**

Enrique Asanza / Business Development Manager  
P +45 8736 2440 / P +45 5267 9486 (+ WhatsApp) / ena@hss.dk

**EUROPE / DEFENSE**

Lene H. Sorensen / Director  
P +45 8736 2478 / lhs@hss.dk

**MIDDLE EAST**

Salah Albattah / Regional Sales Manager  
P +966 550 510 241 / P +962 795 045 234 / sab@hss.dk

**INDIA / SAARC**

Harish Sandal / Senior Technical Consultant & Regional Sales Manager  
P +91 99100 34003 / hsa@hss.dk

**SPAIN / PORTUGAL / LATIN AMERICA**

David Montero / Senior Technical Consultant & Regional Sales Manager  
P +34 640 795 251 (+ WhatsApp) / dms@hss.dk

**COLOMBIA**

Nick Castro / Sales Manager  
P +57 316 689 5949 / nkc@hss.dk

**ORBCOMM®**

CONNECTING THE  
WORLD'S ASSETS



# ST 9100

## Hardware Guide

T413, Version 03  
Apr 2021

© ORBCOMM®

## CONTACT AND LEGAL INFORMATION

### Visit ORBCOMM Online

[www.ORBCOMM.com](http://www.ORBCOMM.com)

### Contact Support

[partner-support@orbcomm.com](mailto:partner-support@orbcomm.com)

+1.613.836.2222

<https://partner-support.orbcomm.com>

### Export Control Statement

The contents of this document, in whole or in part, shall not be exported from the United States, which export shall include, but not be limited to, transmittal to any non-U.S. citizen wherever said person is located, except in accordance with all United States laws and regulations relating to exports and to all administrative acts of the U.S. Government pursuant to such laws and regulations. Diversion, re-export or transshipment of the contents of this document, in whole or in part, contrary to U.S. law is also strictly prohibited.

### Trademark Notice

The ORBCOMM name and the ORBCOMM logo are registered trademarks owned by ORBCOMM LLC or its affiliated companies.

The u-blox name and logo are registered trademarks of u-blox Holding AG.

The Bluetooth® wordmark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

INMARSAT, the Inmarsat logo and IsatData Pro are trademarks of Inmarsat used under license by ORBCOMM. Inmarsat is not responsible for the operation and regulatory compliance of the products and services referred to in this document that connect to the Inmarsat system.

Other trademarks, trade names, and logos are those of their respective owners.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Contact and Legal Information</b> .....	<b>2</b>
Contact Support .....	2
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>List of Figures</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>6</b>
Purpose .....	6
Notation .....	6
Reference .....	6
Battery Safety Warnings .....	6
<b>1 Product Overview</b> .....	<b>8</b>
1.1 Overview of the Messaging System .....	9
1.2 Terminal .....	10
1.3 Transceiver Components .....	10
1.3.1 Transceiver Unit .....	10
1.3.2 Satellite Antenna .....	11
1.3.3 Cellular Antenna .....	12
1.3.4 Terminal Shroud .....	13
1.3.5 ST 9100 Cables and Connectors .....	13
<b>2 Specifications</b> .....	<b>14</b>
2.1 Temperature .....	14
2.1.1 Internal Backup Battery Temperature .....	14
2.2 Electrical .....	14
2.2.1 Input Range .....	14
2.2.2 Power Consumption .....	14
2.2.3 Load Dump Protection .....	15
2.2.4 Inrush Currents .....	15
2.2.5 Reverse Voltage Input .....	15
2.2.6 SIM Cards .....	15
2.3 Connectors .....	16
2.3.1 Connector Pin Assignment .....	16
2.4 I/O Interface .....	17
2.4.1 Standard General Purpose I/Os .....	17
2.4.1.1 Digital Input .....	18
2.4.1.2 Digital Output .....	19
2.4.1.3 Analog Input .....	20



2.4.2 Dedicated Outputs .....	20
2.4.3 Multi-purpose Ports .....	21
2.4.3.1 Input Only Ports .....	21
2.4.3.2 Analog Inputs (0-5 V) .....	22
2.4.3.3 Inputs 4-20 mA .....	22
2.5 Serial Interfaces .....	23
2.5.1 CAN Bus .....	23
2.5.2 RS-485/J1708 .....	24
2.5.3 RS-232 (Console and Auxiliary) .....	24
2.5.4 1-Wire .....	24
2.6 RF Specifications .....	25
2.6.1 Satellite (Standard) Antenna .....	25
2.6.2 Satellite (Low Elevation) Antenna .....	25
2.6.3 Cellular Antenna .....	25
2.6.3.1 Cellular Antenna Electrical .....	26
2.7 Satellite Transmitting Power .....	26
2.8 GNSS Module .....	26
2.9 Internal Backup Battery .....	26
2.10 Memory .....	27
2.11 Environmental .....	27
2.12 Sensors .....	28
2.12.1 Temperature Sensor .....	28
2.12.2 Accelerometer .....	28
2.13 Cellular Module - LTE .....	28
2.13.1 Transceivers Operating in the Americas .....	28
2.13.2 Transceivers Operating Outside of the Americas .....	29
2.14 LED .....	30
2.15 Mechanical .....	31
2.15.1 ST 9100 .....	31
2.15.2 Cellular Antenna .....	32
2.15.3 Satellite Antenna .....	33
2.15.3.1 Standard Antenna .....	33
2.15.3.2 Low Elevation Antenna .....	34
2.15.3.3 Terminal Shroud .....	34
<b>3 Compliance .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>APPENDIX A Development Cable .....</b>	<b>38</b>





## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: ST 9100 Satellite-Cellular Transceiver .....	8
Figure 2: System Architecture .....	9
Figure 3: Connector Position .....	11
Figure 4: SIM Access Door .....	11
Figure 5: Reset Button .....	11
Figure 6: Standard Satellite Antenna .....	12
Figure 7: Low Elevation Satellite Antenna .....	12
Figure 8: Cellular Antenna .....	13
Figure 9: Terminal Shroud .....	13
Figure 10: Transceiver View of Connector .....	16
Figure 11: Digital Input .....	18
Figure 12: Digital Output .....	19
Figure 13: Analog Input .....	20
Figure 14: Open Drain Outputs .....	21
Figure 15: Dedicated Inputs .....	22
Figure 16: LED Location .....	30
Figure 17: ST 9100 Top View Dimensions .....	31
Figure 18: ST 9100 Side Connector View Dimensions .....	32
Figure 19: Satellite Antenna (standard and low elevation) - Bottom View (mm) .....	33
Figure 20: Standard Antenna Height Dimensions (mm) .....	33
Figure 21: Low Elevation Antenna Height Dimensions (mm) .....	34
Figure 22: Terminal Shroud Dimensions .....	35
Figure 23: Development Cable .....	38

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Transceiver with Internal Backup Battery Temperature Specifications .....	14
Table 2: Transceiver Input Currents .....	14
Table 3: Electrical Pin Assignment .....	16
Table 4: Multi-GNSS Specifications .....	26
Table 5: Internal Backup Battery .....	27
Table 6: LED Operation .....	30
Table 7: Development Cable Connectors .....	39



## PREFACE

### Purpose

This document is as an overview of the hardware characteristics and specifications for the ST 9100.

### Notation

A terminal consists of a transceiver unit plus antennas.

Hardware components and hardware labels in this document might not be exactly as shown and are subject to change without notice.

**CAUTION:** This safety symbol warns of possible hazards to personnel, equipment, or both. It includes hazards that will or can cause personal injury, property damage, or death if the hazard is not avoided.

**Note:** A note indicates information with no potential hazard. A note indicates points of interest or provides supplementary information about a feature or task.

Numbered lists indicate a series of steps required to complete a task or function.

Bulleted lists highlight information where order or sequence is not crucial.

### Reference

The content of the following documents might be useful in conjunction with this guide. These documents are available from the downloads section of the partner support website or from the ORBCOMM Developer Toolkit (ODT), which is also available from the website.

Document names and numbers are subject to change, or be discontinued, without notice. Always check the partner support website for the most current version of these documents.

[N210]	IsatData Pro Gateway Web Service 2 User Guide
[N206]	MTWS Cellular Protocol
[T404]	LSF Developer Guide (FW v4.x)
[T405]	IsatData Pro Service API Ref (FW v4.x)
[T414]	ST 9100 Installation Guide

### Battery Safety Warnings

**CAUTION:** Do not short circuit or expose the battery to temperatures above the maximum rated temperature.

**CAUTION:** Always follow local disposal guidelines to properly dispose of the Lithium-ion battery and the device.

**CAUTION:** Store in a cool, well ventilated area. Elevated temperatures will result in shortened battery life.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT replace the battery. Changing the battery without ORBCOMM's permission could violate regulatory conformity.



CAUTION: DO NOT throw the internal battery or the device into fire.



## 1 PRODUCT OVERVIEW

The ST 9100 is a flexible, robust, and programmable dual mode satellite-cellular terminal. It is ideal for remotely monitoring and controlling fixed and portable assets in industries as diverse as transportation, oil and gas, utilities, maritime and more. The versatile, environmentally sealed ST 9100 is ideal for rugged environments in the world's most remote areas.

The ST 9100 (Figure 1) is a satellite-cellular terminal. Features include the following:

- An IsatData Pro satellite-cellular transceiver for communicating with the network
  - Part number ST9100-D01 for use in the Americas
  - Part number ST9100-C01 for use outside of the Americas
- An integral multi-GNSS subsystem
- Four (4) general purpose I/Os
- Two (2) dedicated open drain outputs
- Four (4) inputs (digital or 0-5 V analog of which the first two can be configured as 4-20 mA)
- Two (2) RS-232 ports
- One (1) RS-485 port
- Two (2) CAN Bus ports
- One (1) 1-Wire interface
- 3-Axis 16-bit accelerometer
- Multiple SIM support
- Cellular module
- Bluetooth connectivity
- Internal backup battery
- Satellite antenna (p/n ST901065-APA standard antenna, ST901066-APA low elevation antenna)
- Cellular antenna - LTE/3G/2G fallback (p/n ST101066-001)
- Terminal shroud (optional- p/n ST101014-001)

Figure 1: ST 9100 Satellite-Cellular Transceiver



The transceiver's built-in programmability allows it to work as a standalone data-messaging transceiver, with built-in I/O data collection and processing capabilities. Feature-rich software tools make programming easy and shorten the design and testing time. The transceiver can also be configured with terminal apps. Terminal apps are configurable device-level applications that include specific feature sets that are implemented by ORBCOMM. Contact Customer Support or your Account Manager for further details.

## 1.1 Overview of the Messaging System

The IsatData Pro satellite messaging system is designed to support the management of mobile or fixed assets located around the world. An asset fitted with one of ORBCOMM's satellite based mobile terminals can have their status and locations monitored and send large messages.

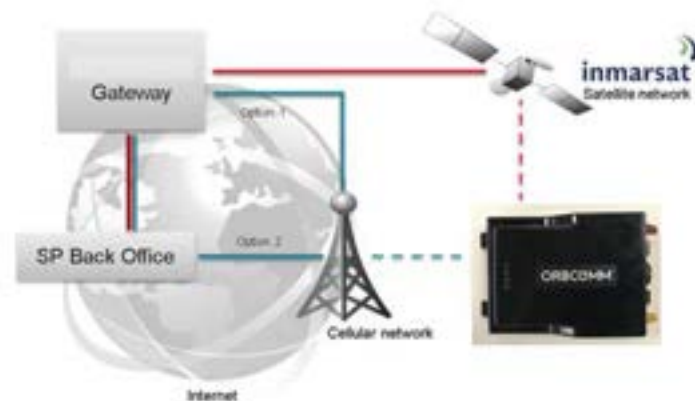
The network provides the following key features and benefits:

- Polling of terminal status and location
- Scheduled reporting of terminal status and location
- Transmission of text messages to and from a serial port on the transceiver
- Two-way communication for messaging to and from the asset for near real-time control
- Up to 6,399 bytes from-mobile messages
- Up to 10,000 bytes to-mobile messages
- Default acknowledged messages
- Global service

Service is provided to end users by Solution Providers (SPs) who use the IsatData Pro network to offer particular applications and/or services to their clients. The SPs link their application services to the satellite terminals by connecting to the IsatData Pro gateway. This acts as the communications hub of the system, routing traffic to and from the terminals and the various service providers.

The terminal can be configured to route cellular messages through the same IsatData Pro Gateway that supplies satellite messages. This is shown as Option 1 in the System Diagram. Option 2 represents a terminal configured to route cellular messages directly to a customer or Solution Provider proprietary cell server. In this case the connection to ORBCOMM's IsatData Pro Gateway supplies satellite messages. Refer to [\[T404, N206, and N210\]](#) for more information about configuring the terminal's cellular messaging transport.

Figure 2: System Architecture



The satellite-cellular terminal is based on Lua software and is supported by a suite of IsatData Pro tools, enabling SPs a programmable platform they can tailor to their specific applications.

## 1.2 Terminal

**Note:** Hardware components may not be exactly as shown in this document. A terminal consists of a transceiver unit plus antennas.

Transceivers with a standard antenna operate on the IsatData Pro network at an elevation angle of 20° to 90° and -5° to 90° for transceivers with low elevation antennas. The transceivers are self-contained, compact, and provide low power consumption.

A cellular module is available to operate over the cellular network

The transceiver's built-in programmability allows it to work as a stand-alone with built-in I/O data collection and processing capabilities. Terminals are suitable for the AVL market.

Feature-rich software tools make application design easy and shorten the design and testing time. ORBCOMM also provides consulting services to SPs to help program the transceiver and get customer applications running quickly.

## 1.3 Transceiver Components

**CAUTION:** Do not rely solely on the terminal for emergency (SOS) calls.

In addition to the features mentioned earlier, the transceiver has the following benefits:

- Designed to be used as a standalone or incorporated into an SP solution
- Built-in dual-GNSS receiver to calculate position, speed, and heading
- Quick and easy installation reduces labor time and costs
- Installed firmware
- Flexible custom application design (Lua Services Framework)
- Wide operational temperature range
- Satellite plus cellular modem integration
- Discrete I/O ports to interface with a wide range of after-market accessories
- Rugged construction

### 1.3.1 Transceiver Unit

Each transceiver is a self-contained unit, including a satellite/cellular modem, a multi-GNSS module, programmable microcontroller, and multiple discrete and analog I/Os (input/output) capable of monitoring and controlling external sensors and devices. Ideal for mobile applications, it is also suitable for fixed installations.

Arranging the transceiver unit's connectors (Figure 3) at one end of the unit simplifies installation. Sturdy flanges on the side make mounting quick and easy.

Figure 3: Connector Position



An anti-tamper SIM door on the back side of the transceiver (Figure 4) provides easy access to the SIM card holder and reset button.

Figure 4: SIM Access Door



Figure 5: Reset Button



### 1.3.2 Satellite Antenna

**CAUTION:** Use only color-matching antennas.

The satellite-cellular transceiver's satellite antenna is waterproof and designed to operate in extreme environments. It has four mounting flanges for installation.

The satellite antenna connects to the transceiver using a 5 m (16 ft.) cable terminated with a curry yellow colored FAKRA RF connector.

The satellite-cellular transceiver is available with either the standard satellite antenna (Figure 6) or the low elevation satellite antenna (Figure 7).

Figure 6: Standard Satellite Antenna



Figure 7: Low Elevation Satellite Antenna



### 1.3.3 Cellular Antenna

**CAUTION:** Use only color-matching antennas.

The ST 9100 cellular antenna is an LTE antenna with a burgundy colored FAKRA connector.



Figure 8: Cellular Antenna



### 1.3.4 Terminal Shroud

Use the optional terminal shroud if mounting the transceiver outdoors.

Figure 9: Terminal Shroud



### 1.3.5 ST 9100 Cables and Connectors

The following are available for the ST 9100:

- A 5-meter blunt cut cable (p/n ST101062-002). Refer to [\[T414\]](#) for details.
- An IP67 Field Installable Connector (p/n ST101096). Refer to [\[T414\]](#) for details.
- A development cable (p/n ST101084-001). Refer to [APPENDIX A](#) for details.

**CAUTION:** An external 5 A slow blow fuse must be added in series with the external voltage wire ([Table 3](#)).

## 2 SPECIFICATIONS

### 2.1 Temperature

Parameter	Value
Operating Temperature Range	-20°C to +80°C (-4°F to +176°F)
Storage Temperature Range	-20°C to +35°C (-4°F to +95°F)

#### 2.1.1 Internal Backup Battery Temperature

Table 1 defines the internal backup battery's temperature specifications.

Table 1: Transceiver with Internal Backup Battery Temperature Specifications

Parameter	Value
Charge Temperature Range	0°C to +45°C (32°F to +113°F)
Discharge Temperature Range	-20°C to +75°C (-4°F to +167°F)
Storage Range	
≤ 1 month	-20°C to +45°C (-4°F to +113°F)
≤ 3 months	-20°C to +35°C (-4°F to +95°F)
≤ 1 year	0°C to +30°C (32°F to +86°F)
Ideal for long-term storage	10°C to +25°C (60±25% R.H.), (50°F to +77°F)

### 2.2 Electrical

#### 2.2.1 Input Range

**CAUTION:** An external 5 A slow blow fuse must be added in series with the external voltage wire (Table 3).

Parameter	Value
Power Supply Voltage	9 to 32 V DC

#### 2.2.2 Power Consumption

Typical values with a transceiver input voltage of 12 VDC.

Table 2: Transceiver Input Currents

Mode of Operation	Condition	25°C (77°F)	-40°C (-40°F)	85°C (185°F)	Unit
Sleep	Externally powered	511	322	750	μA
Charger	ON	400	N/A	N/A	mA
SatCom Tx	Burst current	733.87	720.77	728.13	mA

Mode of Operation	Condition	25°C (77°F)	-40°C (-40°F)	85°C (185°F)	Unit
SatCom Rx	Burst current for Rx frequency. 1540045000 1000 2 (C/No=42dBHz)	76.70	25.77	80.13	mA
GPS	Cold fix current during uBlox on command	32.60	38.37	36.59	mA
TOBY Rx (Idle)	measure Rx level in 129 channels for 1000 ms intervals	91.52	101.36	102.3	mA
	measure Rx level in LTE FDD5 for 1000 ms	88.97	92.31	104	mA
	measure Rx level in LTE FDD 12 for 1000 ms	89.17	91.10	156.92	mA
TOBY Tx max	2G-850 TX in channel=189, PCL=0 (max power), Seq=5, Mod=1(GMSK), Interval=5000 ms	403.99	375.03	473.8	mA
	2G-900 TX in channel=37, PCL=0 (max power), Seq=5, Mod=1(GMSK), Interval=5000 ms	777.52	614.95	900	mA
	2G-1900 TX in channel=698, PCL=0 (max power), Seq=5, Mod=1(GMSK), Interval=5000 ms	504.42	510.73	525.17	mA
	4G FDD band 5, 850MHz, TX in channel=120525, power=24 dBm, Internal=5000 ms	224.88	202.20	236.68	mA
	4G FDD band 2, 1900MHz, TX in channel=118900, power=24 dBm, Internal=5000 ms	270.94	288.16	282.63	mA

### 2.2.3 Load Dump Protection

Active load dump protection is provided on the power pins. The cut-off is >34 V and automatic reset of the load dump occurs when the input voltage is <34 V.

### 2.2.4 Inrush Currents

Typical inrush currents: 12 volts and 25°C (77°F).

Quantity	Value
Peak in-rush current	4.12 A
In-rush pulse duration	138 μS

### 2.2.5 Reverse Voltage Input

Parameter	Voltage
Reverse Polarity Protection	-40 V DC (maximum)

### 2.2.6 SIM Cards

The transceiver offers two embedded (not field replaceable) and one removable 3FF (micro SIM) SIM card. The specifications for the SIM cards are the same.

Parameter	Value
SIM Voltage	1.8 V or 3 V standard SIM cards
Card Detection	Switch connected to cellular module

## 2.3 Connectors

<b>Transceiver 24 position mating connector</b>	Chogori Technology Company
<b>Satellite Antenna</b>	IMS Connector Systems 3400.SMBA.2K10.089 (RG58/LMR-195 sized cable) FAKRA - K-curry yellow
<b>Cellular Antenna</b>	IMS Connector Systems 3400.SMBA.2D10.029 9RG174 sized cable) FAKRA - D-bordeaux

### 2.3.1 Connector Pin Assignment

Table 3 maps to the layout shown in Figure 10.

Figure 10: Transceiver View of Connector

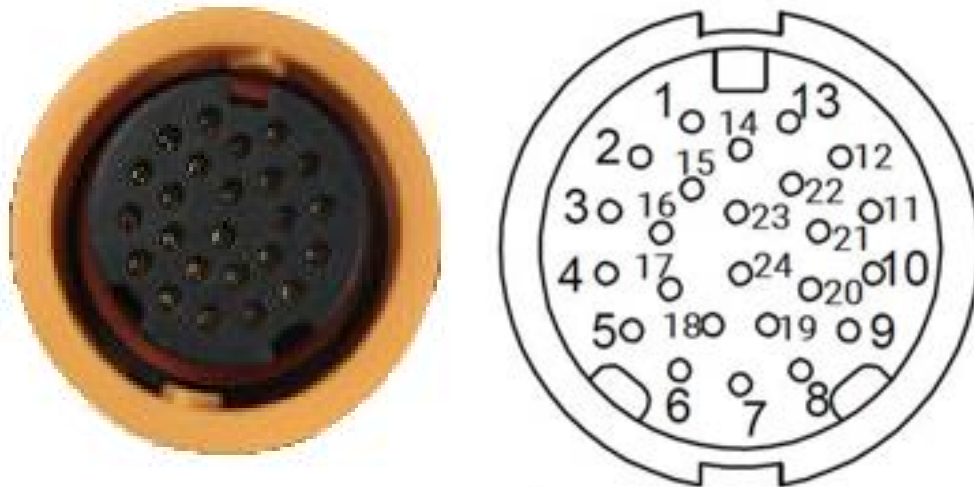


Table 3: Electrical Pin Assignment

PIN	Function	Type	Description
1	RS485_A	I/O	Half duplex RS485 driver output or receiver input (complementary to RS485_B)
2	Digital_IN4 / 0-5 V_IN4	I	Digital input or 0-5 V analog input
3	Digital_IN3 / 0-5 V_IN3	I	Digital input or 0-5 V analog input
4	I/O_4	I/O	Multifunction GPIO, push-pull, analog input, current limited current sink or ignition load
5	I/O_2	I/O	Multifunction GPIO, push-pull, analog input or current sink
6	Ground	PWR	External supply ground return
7	External Voltage	PWR	External 9-32 VDC supply
8	Output_6	O	Open drain output

Parameter	Min.	Max.	Units
<b>Current Loop</b>			
Operating current range	4	20	mA
Load voltage at 4 mA	0.396	0.404	V
Load voltage at 20 mA	1.98	2.02	V
Load resistance	99	101	$\Omega$
Loop voltage (supplied by users externally)	10	32	V
Maximum input high voltage	-	32	-
<b>ESD</b>			
TVS breakdown voltage	40	44.2	V
TVS clamp voltage	-	58.1	V

## 2.5 Serial Interfaces

Transceivers have the following interfaces:

- 2 x CAN Bus
- 1 x RS-485/J1708
- 2 x RS-232
- 1 x 1-Wire

### 2.5.1 CAN Bus

The transceiver provides two CAN Bus interfaces for sending and receiving frames.

The transceiver incorporates a controller area network interface with signaling rates up to 1 Mbps.

**Note:** You must provide a termination resistor externally to the transceiver.

Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Input Common Mode Voltage	-7	-	12	V
Differential Input Threshold	-6	-	6	V
Peak to Peak Output Common Mode Voltage	-	1	-	V
Differential Output Voltage (dominant)	1.2	-	3	V
Differential Output Voltage (recessive) No Load	-0.5	-	0.05	V
CANH or CANL	-36	-	36	V
<b>ESD Protection</b>				
Human Body Model <sup>1</sup>	-	±16	-	kV
Contact Discharge Model	-	±30	-	kV

<sup>1</sup>All electrical interfaces operate normally after being subjected to 8 kV ESD contact discharge per IEC 60945 and IEC 61000-4-2 human body model, level 3.

PIN	Function	Type	Description
9	1Wire Com	PWR	1-WIRE return path
10	Console_RS232_TX	O	±15 kV ESD protected, RS-232 level (nominally ±5.5 V) transmitter outputs
11	AUX_RS232_RX	I	TTL/CMOS level receiver outputs
12	CAN1_H	I/O	High level CAN BUS line
13	CAN1_L	I/O	Low level CAN BUS line
14	CAN0_L	I/O	Low level CAN BUS line
15	RS485_B	I/O	Half duplex RS485 driver output or receiver input (complementary to RS485_A)
16	Digital/Analog_IN1 / 0-5 V_IN1 / P1_4-20 mA+	I	Digital input or 0-5 V analog input or 4-20 mA input
17	I/O_3	I/O	Multifunction GPIO, push-pull, analog input or current sink
18	I/O_1	I/O	Multifunction GPIO, push-pull, analog input or current sink
19	Output_5	O	Open drain output
20	1Wire_DATA	I/O	Input/output driver for 1-Wire Line
21	Console_RS232_RX	I	TTL/CMOS level receiver outputs
22	AUX_RS232_TX	O	±15 kV ESD protected, RS-232 level (nominally ±5.5 V) transmitter outputs
23	CAN0_H	I/O	High level CAN BUS line
24	Digital_IN2 / 0-5 V_IN2 / P2_4-20 mA+	I	Digital input or 0-5 V analog input or 4-20 mA input

## 2.4 I/O Interface

### 2.4.1 Standard General Purpose I/Os

The transceiver supports four (4) configurable general purpose I/Os (GPIO I/O\_1 to I/O\_4):

- Digital input with weak (1 MΩ) pull-down
- Digital input with 20-50 K pull-down
- Digital input with 20-50 K pull-up
- Analog input
- Digital output – push-pull
- Digital output – open drain
- Disabled

On certain vehicles, I/O\_1 can be used to monitor ignition. The voltage on the I/O pin may not drop low enough to present a logic zero to the host processor when the ignition is turned off. In such a case I/O\_1 can be configured to switch in a 4 kOhm load to draw the voltage below the logic zero threshold level of the host processor ensuring a logic zero. The other I/O ports should not be used for ignition monitoring. Refer to section [2.4.1.1](#)

I/O\_4 provides dedicated overcurrent/short circuit protection circuitry when operated in the open drain mode. The other I/Os do not have this circuitry therefore I/O\_4 is recommended for applications requiring overcurrent/short circuit protection.

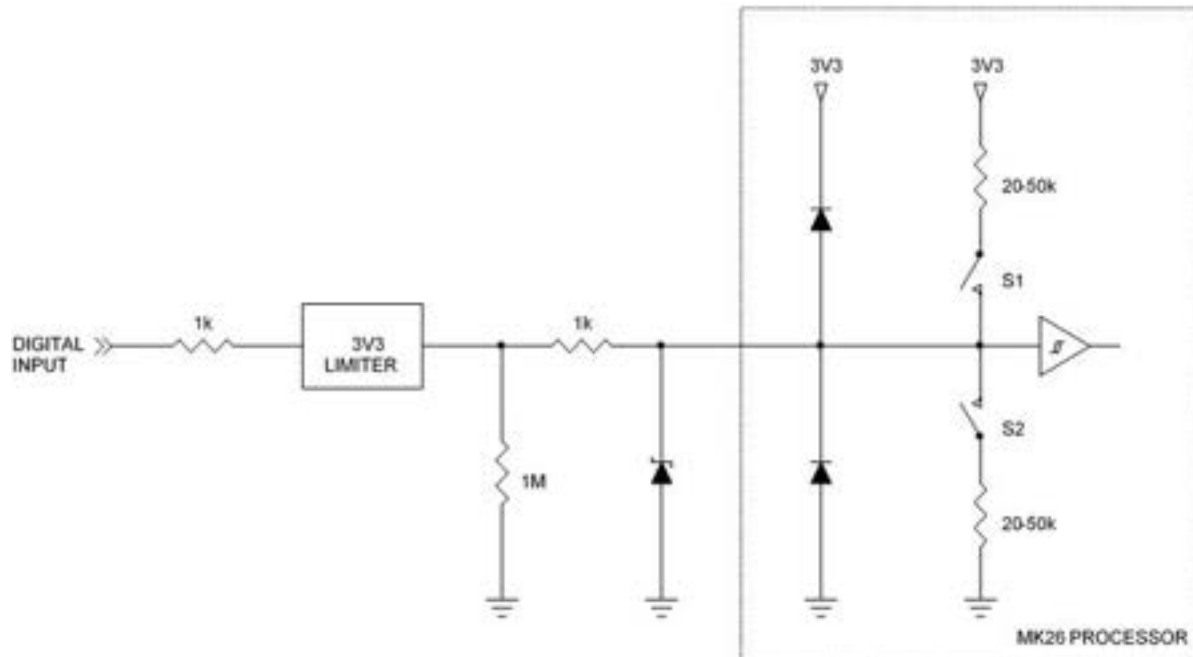
Simplified block diagrams of the I/O when configured as digital inputs, digital outputs, and analog inputs are shown in the figures below ([Figure 11](#), [Figure 12](#), and [Figure 13](#)).

The transceiver also supports two dedicated outputs (Output\_5 and Output\_6). More information on these outputs can be found in section 2.3.1.

### 2.4.1.1 Digital Input

Figure 11 shows a schematic of the I/O when configured as a digital input.

Figure 11: Digital Input



Input Type	S1	S2
With weak pull-down	Open	Open
With pull-down	Open	Closed
With pull-up	Closed	Open

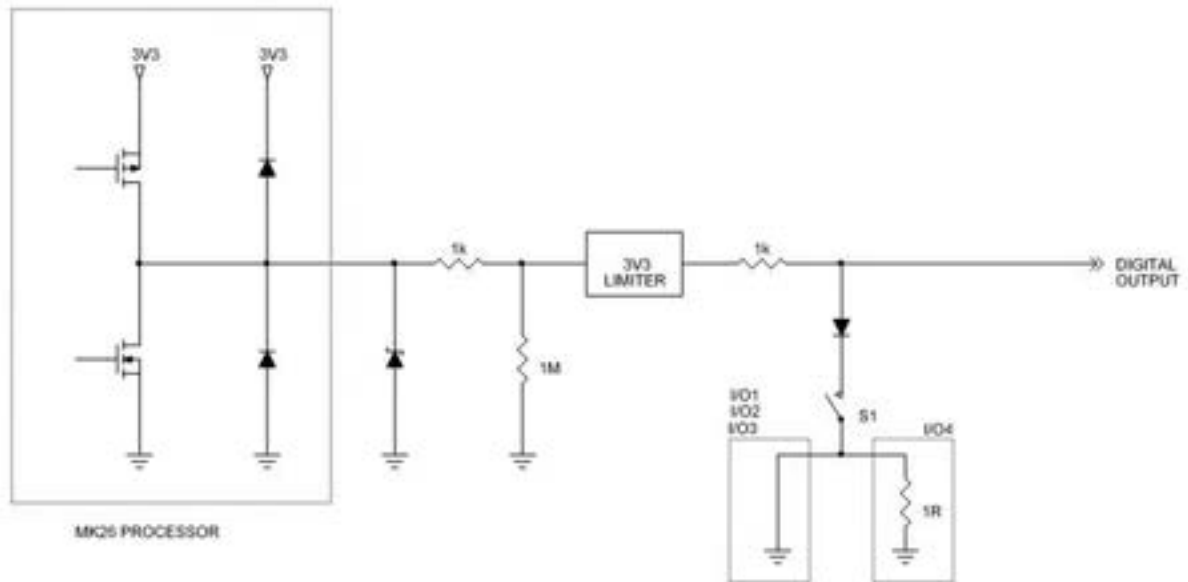
The input specifications are provided in the table below.

Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Input low range	-10	-	1.16	V
Input high range	2.31	-	150	V
Input current with weak pull-down (weak 1 M $\Omega$ pull-down still in place); $V_{in} = 3.3$ V	-	4.5	-	$\mu$ A
Input source current with 50 k pull-up ( $V_{in} = 0.0$ V)	-	75	-	$\mu$ A
Input sink current with 50 k pull-down ( $V_{in} = 3.3$ to 150 V)	-	81	-	$\mu$ A
Input bandwidth	1	-	-	kHz

### 2.4.1.2 Digital Output

Figure 12 shows a schematic of the I/O when configured as a digital output.

Figure 12: Digital Output



Push-pull	S1 = Open
Open drain	S1 = Closed (Low Impedance) S1 = Open (High Impedance)

#### 2.4.1.2.1 Push-pull

In the push-pull configuration the output is driven directly from the microprocessor.

Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Output high voltage - open circuit	3.23	3.3	3.37	V
Output high voltage (sourcing 10 mA)	2.8	-	-	V
Output low voltage (sinking 10 mA)	-	-	0.5	V
Output bandwidth	100	-	-	Hz

#### 2.4.1.2.2 Open Drain

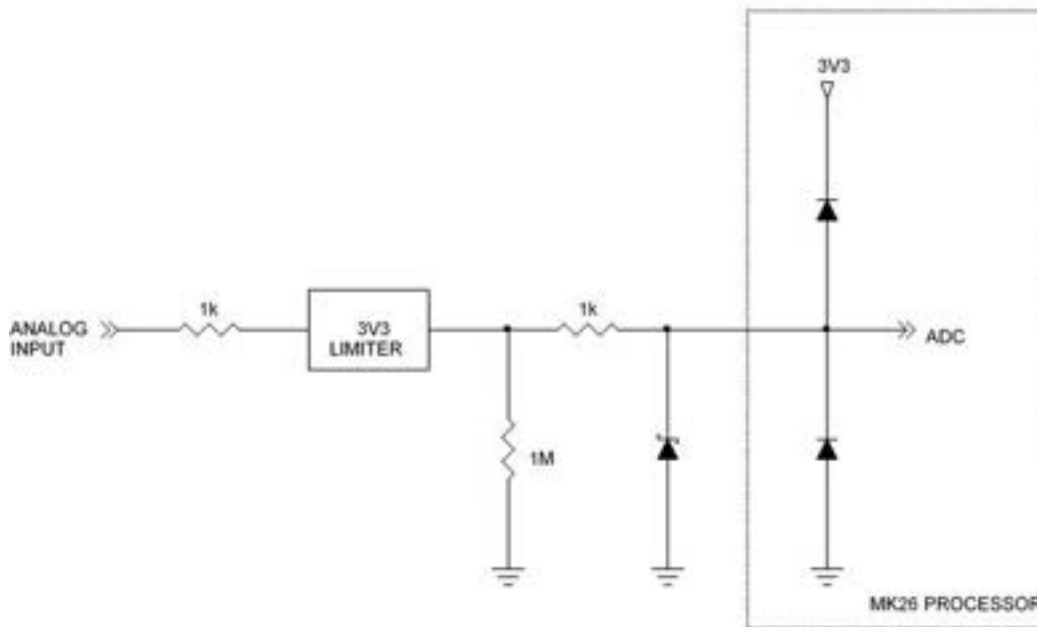
Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Sink current (do not exceed)	-	-	250	mA
Output voltage (sinking 250 mA)				
I/O_1 to I/O_3	-	1.15	1.35	V
I/O_4	-	1.40	1.60	V
Absolute limits (high impedance)	-10	-	150	V
Output bandwidth	100	-	-	Hz



### 2.4.1.3 Analog Input

Figure 13 shows a schematic of the I/O when configured as an analog input.

Figure 13: Analog Input

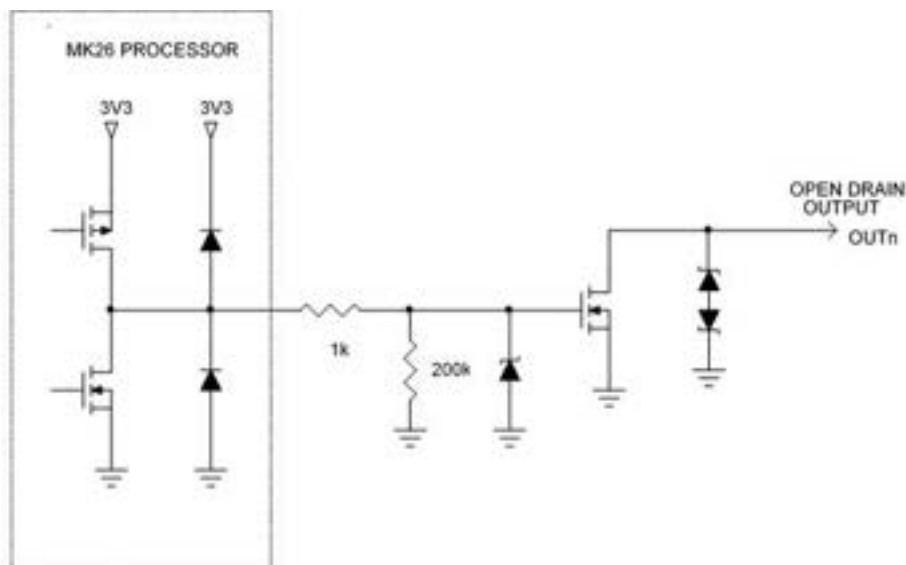


Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Input impedance	-	1	-	MΩ
Normal input measurement range	0	-	3.3	V
Resolution (12 bits)	-	0.8	-	mV
Proportional measurement error	-	-	3	%
INL error	-	-	2	LSB
Absolute limits	-10	-	150	V

### 2.4.2 Dedicated Outputs

The transceiver provides two open drain outputs (output\_5 and output\_6) that can be used to turn on various devices such as relays, lights or audible alarms. These outputs are capable of sinking current only. Both outputs are controlled from the host processor. The outputs are not protected against over current conditions and you must ensure that the maximum current capability of the internal switch is not exceeded. Both outputs include ESD protection. You must also ensure that the voltage applied to the output pin does not exceed the maximum value as shown in the table below.

Figure 14: Open Drain Outputs



Parameter	Max.	Units
Sink Current	250	mA
Applied Voltage	40	V
Internal switch power dissipation	691	mW
Voltage output (sink current = 250 mA)	2.76 (minimum 48 mV)	V

### 2.4.3 Multi-purpose Ports

In addition to the standard I/Os, the transceiver provides the following multi-function ports.

- Four (4) digital input only ports.
- Four (4) 0-5 V analog input only ports.
- Two (2) 4-20 mA inputs.

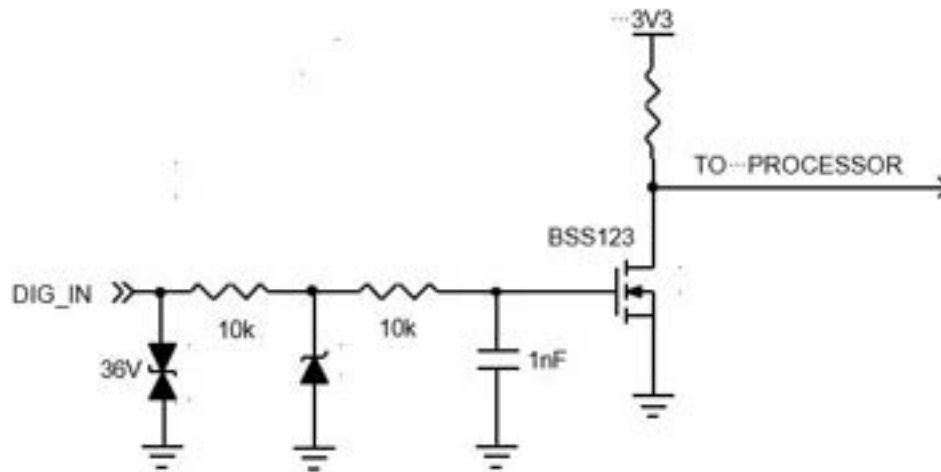
Four pins on the interface connector are independently configured to provide the following combinations:

- Four (4) digital inputs or,
- Four (4) 0-5 V analog inputs or,
- Two (2) 4-20 mA inputs or,
- Two (2) digital inputs and two 0-5 V analog inputs or,
- Two (2) digital inputs and one 4-20 mA input or,
- Two (2) 0-5 V analog inputs and one 4-20mA input.

#### 2.4.3.1 Input Only Ports

Four ports ([PINs 2, 3, 16, and 24](#)) can be configured as dedicated inputs. Each input is ESD protected by a 36 V transient voltage suppressor that clamps the input transient at 58 V. A 15 V Zener ensures the FET maximum gate voltage of 20 V is not exceeded.

Figure 15: Dedicated Inputs



Parameter	Min.	Max.	Processor	Units
<b>Digital Input</b>				
Typical Input high voltage (Zener starts conducting at $\pm 14.49$ V)	1.6	14	0	V
Maximum input high voltage	-	32	0	V
Input low voltage	0	1.4	3.3	V
Input frequency	1	10	-	Hz
<b>ESD</b>				
TVS breakdown voltage	40	44.2	-	V
TVS clamp voltage	-	58.1	-	V

### 2.4.3.2 Analog Inputs (0-5 V)

Four ports ([PINs 2, 3, 16, and 24](#)) can be configured as dedicated 0-5 V analog inputs. 0-5 V applied to the ports is converted to 0-3.3 V to be compatible with the ADC voltage range of the host processor.

Parameter	Min.	Max.	Units
<b>Analog Input</b>			
Input voltage range	0	5	V
Maximum input high voltage	-	32	V
<b>ESD</b>			
TVS breakdown voltage	40	44.2	V
TVS clamp voltage	-	58.1	V

### 2.4.3.3 Inputs 4-20 mA

The ST9100 can monitor two 4-20 mA sensors. Two ports ([PINs 16 and 24](#)) can be configured as two dedicated 4-20 mA receivers.

## 2.5.2 RS-485/J1708

The transceiver provides a half-duplex RS-485 or J1708 interface as an accessory bus and for SCADA interfacing with signaling rates up to 250 kbps.

**Note:** You must provide a termination resistor externally to the transceiver when required.

The electrical characteristics of the interface are:

Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Input Common Mode Voltage	-8	-	12.5	V
Differential Input Threshold	-200	-	200	mV
Output Common Mode Voltage	-	1.8	3	V
Differential Drive Output, 54 $\Omega$ load	1.5	2.3	-	V
<b>ESD Protection</b>				
Human Body Model	-	$\pm 16$	-	kV
Contact Discharge Model	-	$\pm 30$	-	kV

## 2.5.3 RS-232 (Console and Auxiliary)

The two RS-232 interfaces default to the following settings: 9600 bit/s, 1 start, 8 data, 1 stop bit, and no parity. The baud rate is configurable up to 115,200 bps.

The electrical characteristics of the interface are:

Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
Rx Input Low Threshold for DTE Connected	-	-	-2.7	V
Rx Input High Threshold for DTE Connected	2.7	-	-	V
Rx Threshold for DTE Disconnected	-0.3	-	0.3	V
Serial Rx Input Low Threshold	0.6	-	-	V
Serial Rx Input High Threshold	-	-	2.4	V
Rx Input Voltage Range	-25	-	25	V
Serial Tx Low Output (3 k $\Omega$ load)	-	-	-3.7	V
Serial Tx High Output (3 k $\Omega$ load)	3.7	-	-	V
<b>ESD Protection</b>				
Human Body Model	-	$\pm 15$	-	kV
Contact Discharge Model	-	$\pm 8$	-	kV

## 2.5.4 1-Wire

The 1-Wire interface allows connection to downstream 1-Wire devices connected on a bus, or to a single button reader. Relative to any attached 1-Wire device, the transceiver behaves as the master. The 1-Wire driver supports 3 or 5 V devices on the bus.

At standard speed, the 1-Wire supports up to 39 devices over a 61-meter (200 feet) CAT5 cable. In overdrive, the usable expected distance is reduced to  $\leq 15$  meters ( $\leq 50$  feet) with a maximum node count of 9.

The electrical characteristics of the interface are:



Parameter	Min.	Typical	Max.	Units
1-Wire Input High Voltage	3	-	-	V
1-Wire Input Low Voltage	-	-	1	V
1-Wire Output Low Voltage (IOL - 8 mA sink current)	-	-	0.2	V
<b>1-Wire ESD Protection Diode and Resistors</b>				
Avalanche Voltage	7.4	-	11.05	V
Trigger Voltage	-	10	11	V
Holding Voltage (IOL - 8 mA sink current)	5.5	-	-	V
Holding Current	11	-	-	mA
Continuous Diode Current	-	-	80	mA

## 2.6 RF Specifications

### 2.6.1 Satellite (Standard) Antenna

Parameter	Value
Maximum EIRP	7 dBW
Elevation Angle	20° to 90° degrees
Maximum transmit antenna gain	4.5 dBic
Rx Operating Frequency	1518-1559 MHz
Tx Operating Frequency	1626.5-1660.5 MHz, 1668-1675 MHz

### 2.6.2 Satellite (Low Elevation) Antenna

Parameter	Value
Maximum EIRP	5 dBW
Elevation Angle	-5° to 90° degrees
Maximum transmit antenna gain	2.5 dBic
Rx Operating Frequency	1518-1559 MHz
Tx Operating Frequency	1626.5-1660.5 MHz, 1668-1675 MHz

### 2.6.3 Cellular Antenna

Parameter	Value
Network Coverage	Global: Cat 4 LTE (B1, B3, B5, B7, B8, B28), UMTS (850, 900, 1900, 2100), Quad-band GSM Americas: Cat 1 LTE (B2, B4, B5, B12), UMTS (850, 900, 1900, 2100), Quad-band GSM
Frequency	700/824/960/1710/1880/2170/2600/2700 MHz
Impedance	50 $\Omega$
VSWR	2.0:1
Gain	2.5 dB
Maximum EIRP	700-2700 MHz



### 2.6.3.1 Cellular Antenna Electrical

Frequency (MHz)	Return Loss (dB)	VSWR	Efficiency (%)	GAIN (dB)
700	-10.62	1.85	46.03	1.45
824	-22.27	1.16	36.48	0.6
960	-14.25	1.48	56.75	1.25
1710	-19.03	1.25	44.98	2.18
1880	-21.14	1.21	66.68	4.74
2170	-10.93	1.78	34.04	1.06
2600	-22.79	1.16	49.32	3.89
2700	-26.19	1.10	60.12	4.45

## 2.7 Satellite Transmitting Power

The maximum transmitting power (EIRP) for the IsatData Pro satellite is 7 dBW.

## 2.8 GNSS Module

The transceiver allows concurrent reception of up to three (3) GNSS channels.

The manufacturer's specifications are given in the table below.

Table 4: Multi-GNSS Specifications

Parameter	GPS	GLONASS	BeiDou	Galileo
<b>Time to First Fix</b>				
Cold Start	29 s	30 s	34 s	45 s
Warm Start	2s	2 s	3 s	7 s
Hot Start	1 s	1 s	1 s	1 s
<b>Sensitivity</b>				
Tracking	-162 dBm	-166 dBm	-160 dBm	-159 dBm
Hot Start	-157 dBm	-156 dBm	-155 dBm	-151 dBm
Cold Start	-148 dBm	-145 dBm	-143 dBm	-138 dBm
<b>Accuracy</b>				
Horizontal Position	2.5 m	4.0 m	3.0 m	4.0 m
Velocity	0.05 m/s			
Heading	0.3 degrees			

## 2.9 Internal Backup Battery

The internal backup battery provides autonomous battery charging to the transceiver and operates directly from the external supply over the 9-32 VDC input range. The internal backup battery contains a protection card to ensure that the pack does not get damaged due to a short circuit, over discharge or an over-charge condition.

If the battery voltage is below the minimum set voltage, the charger turns off.

Table 5: Internal Backup Battery

Parameter	Value
Battery Chemistry	Lithium Ion
Back-up Period	48 hours
Rated Capacity	2000 mAh
Charge (capacity) Retention	90% (after 28 days at 25 ±5°C (77 ±9°F))
Battery Cut-off	7 V
Nominal Pack Voltage	7.2 V (2 x cells in series)
Minimum Discharge Voltage	5 V
Charging Voltage	8.4 V
Peak Output Current	6 A

Refer to section 1.0.1 for internal backup battery temperature ranges.

## 2.10 Memory

Parameter	Value
PSRAM	8 MB
Flash	16 MB

## 2.11 Environmental

Parameter	Description
Vibration	The terminal meets all its specifications during exposure to random vehicular vibration levels per SAE J1455, section 4.10.4.2 figures 6, 7, and 8, and MIL-STD-810H, section 514.8, figure 514.8C-1.
Mechanical Shock	The terminal meets all its specifications after exposure to positive and negative saw tooth shock pulses with peaks of 20 G and durations of 11 ms as specified in MIL-STD-810H, section 516.8, Procedure I, section 2.3.2c.
Thermal Shock	The terminal meets all of its specifications after a thermal shock test as detailed in SAE J1455, section 4.1.3.2
Drop Test	The terminal meets all its specifications after a handling drop test as specified in SAE J1455, section 4.11.3.1.
ESD (Enclosure)	All electrical interfaces operate normally after being subjected to 6 kV ESD contact discharge per IEC 60945 and IEC 61000-4-2 human body model, level 3.
Altitude	The terminal meets all specifications after a nonoperating 12.2 km (7.5 miles) altitude test as detailed in SAE J1455, section 4.9.3, except with an ambient temperature of -40°C (-40°F).
Humidity	The terminal meets all its specifications during exposure to 90% relative humidity at +85°C (185°F), per the test methodology of SAE J1455, section 4.2.3 (3 x 8-hour humidity cycle per figure 4a)
Ingress Protection	IP67 – The terminal meets all of its specifications after immersion and dust tests as detailed in IEC 60529, sections 13.1, 13.4, 14.1, 14.2.7 and 14.3 (with and without optional terminal shroud)



## 2.12 Sensors

### 2.12.1 Temperature Sensor

Parameter	Value
Range	-40 to +85°C (-40 to +185°F)
Accuracy (typical)	±4°C (±7.2°F)

### 2.12.2 Accelerometer

The transceiver has a 3D 16-bit accelerometer to detect motion in any axis.

In low power applications, frequent GPS fixes can dominate the power budget. To reduce the power budget effects of GPS fixes, the accelerometer can be used to detect if motion has occurred.

The accelerometer thresholds to detect advanced features such as driver behavior monitoring vary depending on the environment. To avoid false detects, extensive testing is required to ensure that adequate acceleration magnitude thresholds and time durations are used.

Refer to [T405](#) for additional details.

Parameter	Condition	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
Resolution	-	-	16	-	bit
Acceleration Range	software selectable	-	+2	-	g
		-	+4	-	g
		-	+8	-	g
		-	+16	-	g
Output Data Rate (ODR)	selectable via digital interface	12.5	-	1600 <sup>1</sup>	Hz
Sensitivity	2 g	-	16384	-	LSB/g
	4 g	-	8192	-	LSB/g
	8 g	-	4096	-	LSB/g
	16 g	-	2048	-	LSB/g
Sensitivity Temperature Drift	3 V supply	-	±0.02	-	%/K
Zero-g Offset	Ta = 25°C (77°F)	-	±40	-	mg
Zero-g Offset Temperature Drift	3 V supply	-	±1	-	mg/K
Wake up Time	from low power or suspended modes	-	0.8	-	ms
Start up Time	power on reset	-	3.2	3.8	ms

## 2.13 Cellular Module - LTE

### 2.13.1 Transceivers Operating in the Americas

Transceivers (p/n ST9100-D01), operating in North or South America, have the following characteristics.

<sup>1</sup>The software supports a maximum ODR of 400 Hz.





<b>Type</b>	u-blox Toby R200 series
<b>LTE Module</b>	LTE bands: 2, 4, 5, 12 UMTS bands: 850, 900, 1900, 2100 MHz GSM 850/900/1800/1900 MHz
<b>Output Power</b>	LTE power Class 3 (23dBm) UMTS/HSDPA/HSUPA power Class 3 (24dBm) GSM/GPRS Power Class: *Class 4 (33 dBm) for GSM/E-GSM band *Class 1 (30 dBm) for DCSPCS band EDGE(8-PSK) Power Class: *Class E2 (27 dBm) for GSM/E-GSM band *Class E2 (26 dBm) for DCS/PCS band
<b>Input Power</b>	Peak currents of 1.5 A typical, 1.9 A maximum. Module supply peak current consumption: peak of current consumption through the VCC pins during a GSM 1-slot Tx burst at maximum Tx power, with a matched antenna
<b>Data Transfer</b>	LTE Category 1: up to 10.3Mb/s DL, 5.2 Mb/s UL HSDPA category 8: up to 7.2 Mb/s DL, HSUPA category 6: up to 5.76 Mb/s UL GPRS multi-slot class 33, CS1-CS4, up to 107 kb/s DL, up to 85.6 kb/s UL EDGE multi-slot class 33, MCS1-MCS9, up to 296 kb/s DL, up to 236.8 kb/s UL
<b>Antenna Detect</b>	Output DC current pulse: 9 $\mu$ A typical Output DC current pulse time length: typical 330 $\mu$ s

## 2.13.2 Transceivers Operating Outside of the Americas

Transceivers (p/n ST9100-C01), operating outside of North or South America, have the following characteristics.

<b>Type</b>	u-blox Toby L280 series
<b>LTE Module</b>	LTE bands: 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 28 UMTS bands: 850, 900, 1900, 2100 MHz GSM 850/900/1800/1900 MHz
<b>Output Power</b>	LTE power Class 3 (23dBm) UMTS/HSDPA/HSUPA power Class 3 (24dBm) GSM/GPRS Power Class: *Class 4 (33 dBm) for GSM/E-GSM band *Class 1 (30 dBm) for DCSPCS band EDGE(8-PSK) Power Class: *Class E2 (27 dBm) for GSM/E-GSM band *Class E2 (26 dBm) for DCS/PCS band
<b>Input Power</b>	Peak currents of 1.9 A typical, 2.5 A maximum. Module supply peak current consumption: peak of current consumption through the VCC pins during a GSM 1-slot Tx burst at maximum Tx power, with a matched antenna
<b>Data Transfer</b>	LTE Category 4: up to 150Mb/s DL, 50 Mb/s UL HSDPA category 24: up to 42 Mb/s DL, HSUPA category 6: up to 5.6 Mb/s UL GPRS multi-slot class 12, CS1-CS4, up to 85.6 kb/s DL/UL EDGE multi-slot class 12, MCS1-MCS9, up to 236.8 kb/s DL/UL

<b>Antenna Detect</b>	Output DC current pulse: 21 $\mu$ A typical Output DC current pulse time length: typical 3.6 ms
-----------------------	--





## 2.14 LED

The transceiver has four visible LEDs (2.14) to indicate status. For more detailed LED information, refer to [\[T404\]](#).

Figure 16: LED Location



Table 6: LED Operation

Icon	Function	Description	Color	LED ON	LED OFF
	Sensor	Indicates whether a central device (Bluetooth) is connected to the terminal or if the terminal is in fast advertising mode.	BLUE	Bluetooth Central Connected	Bluetooth Central Disconnected
	Cellular	Indicates cellular communications status. Note: This LED only functions if the cellular module is powered on. The operation of this LED is dependent on the type of cellular module being used in the device.	GREEN	Data 2G/3G /Registered LTE	No Service (no network or not registered)
	Satellite / Satcom	Indicates satellite communications status.	YELLOW	-Power ON /External Reset	-
	Power	Indicates that the transceiver has external power.	RED	External Power Present	External Power Absent

## 2.15 Mechanical

### 2.15.1 ST 9100

Parameter	Value
Mass	465 g (16 oz)
Enclosure Material	Lexan plastic

Figure 17: ST 9100 Top View Dimensions

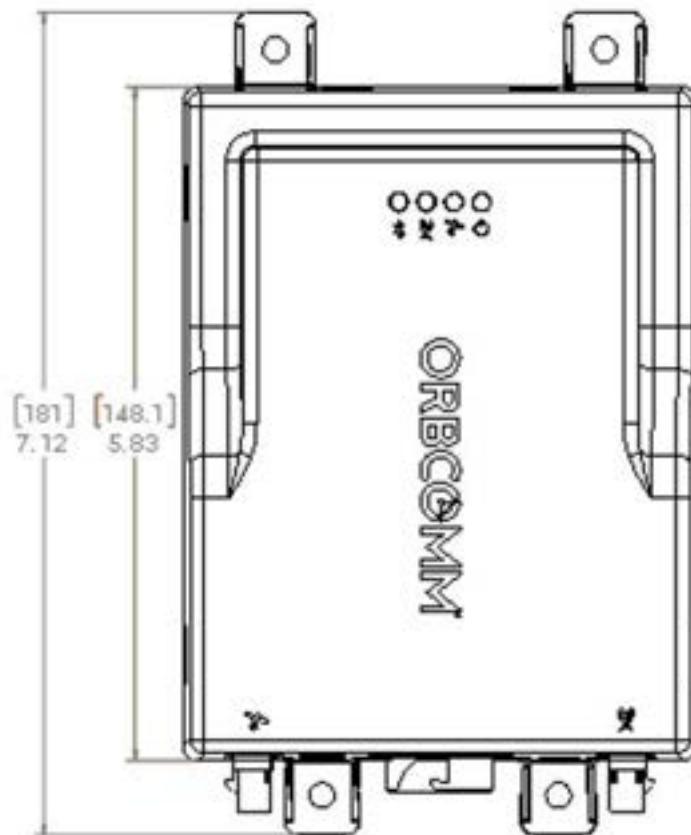
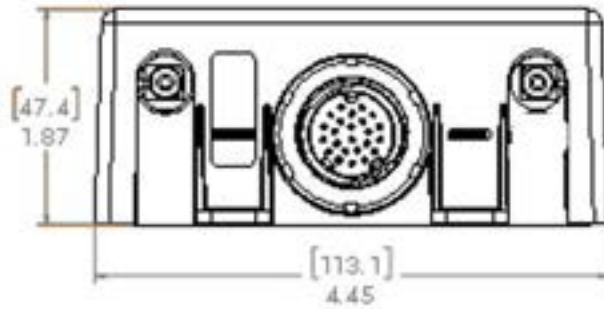


Figure 18: ST 9100 Side Connector View Dimensions

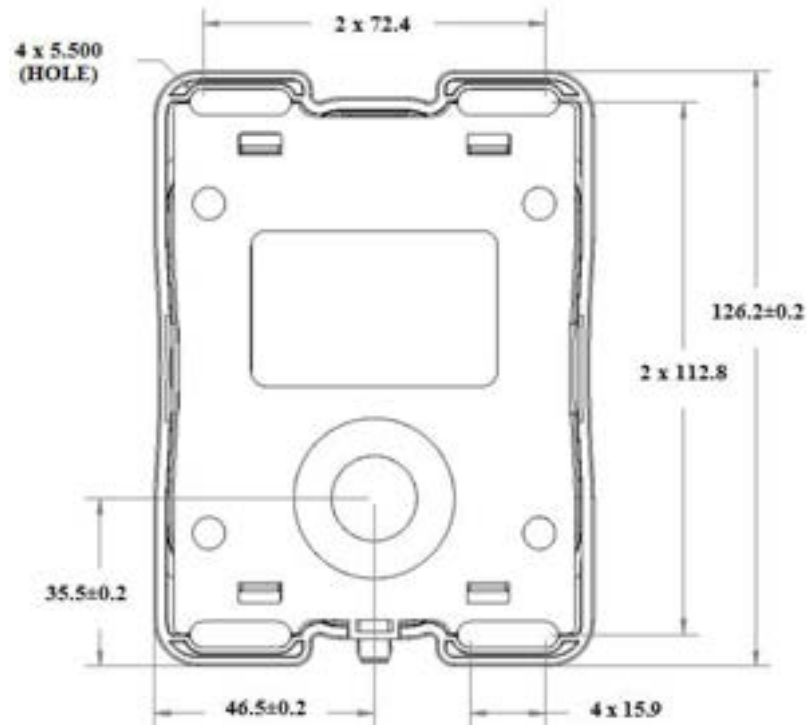


### 2.15.2 Cellular Antenna

Parameter	Value
Mass	55 g (2 oz.)
Dimensions	129.5 x 22.8 x 7 mm (5 in. x 0.9 x 0.27 in.)
Cable length	3 m (10 ft.)
Mounting	FAKRA straight plug connector
Operating Temperature	-40°C to 85°C (-40°F to 185°F)

### 2.15.3 Satellite Antenna

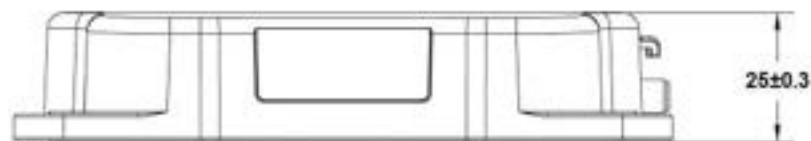
Figure 19: Satellite Antenna (standard and low elevation) - Bottom View (mm)



#### 2.15.3.1 Standard Antenna

Parameter	Value
Mass	Side entry with 5 m (16 ft.) cable: 360 g (13 oz.)
Enclosure Material	Lexan EXL
Color Code	8T9D076 (white)
Sealing Gasket Material	Santoprene®

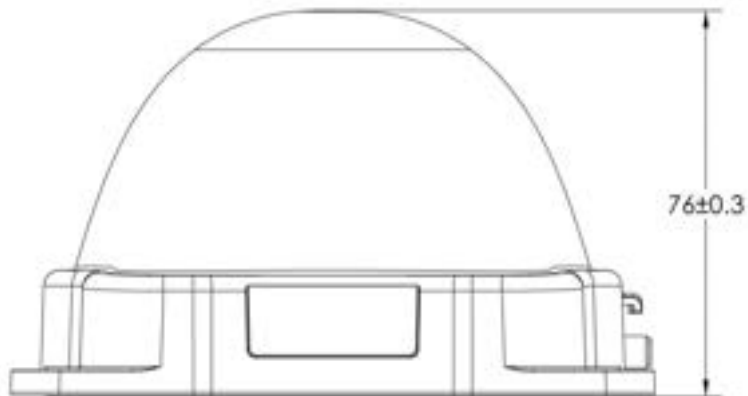
Figure 20: Standard Antenna Height Dimensions (mm)



### 2.15.3.2 Low Elevation Antenna

Parameter	Value
Mass	Side entry with 5 m (16 ft.) cable: 365 g (13 oz.)
Enclosure Material	Lexan EXL
Color Code	8T9D076 (white)
Sealing Gasket Material	Santoprene®

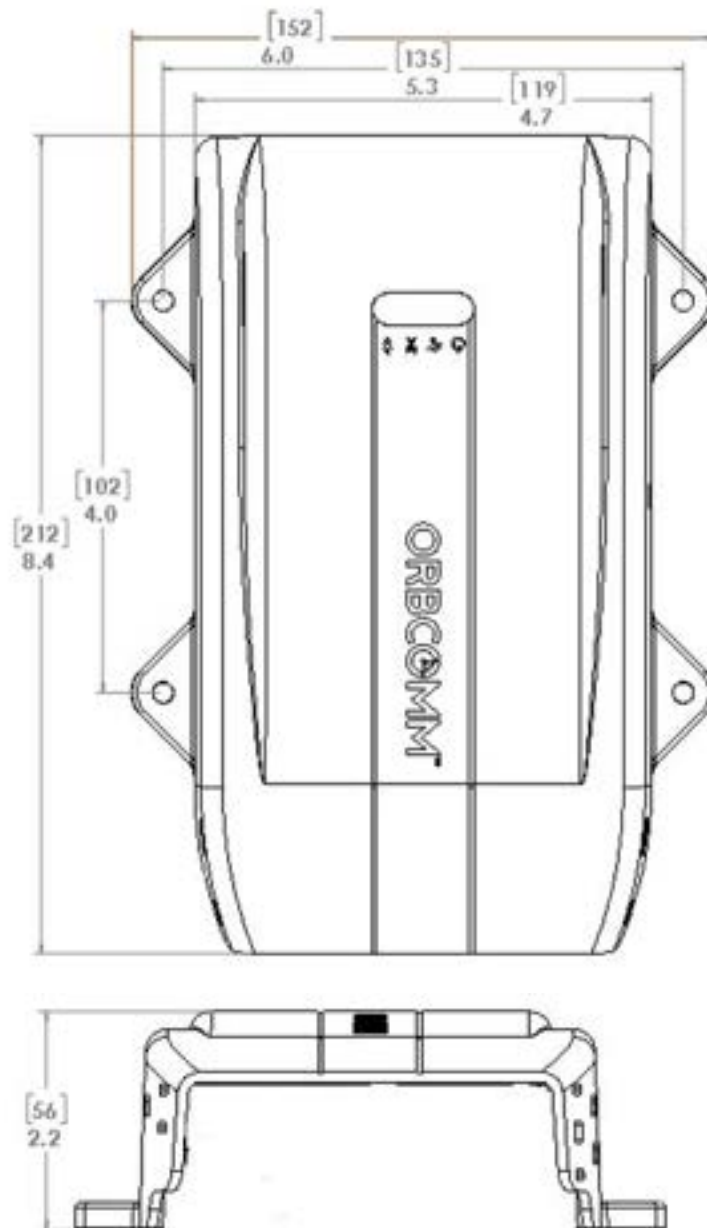
Figure 21: Low Elevation Antenna Height Dimensions (mm)



### 2.15.3.3 Terminal Shroud

Parameter	Value
Mass	150 g (2 oz.)
Enclosure Material	Lexan EXL
Color Code	8T9D076 (white)

Figure 22: Terminal Shroud Dimensions



## 3 COMPLIANCE

Certifications for the following have been received, unless noted otherwise. Contact your Account Manger for updates.

### Inmarsat Type Approval

#### Industry Canada

- IC certification is pending
- ICES-003
- RSS-170, Issue 2, Spectrum Management and Telecommunications Policy, Radio Standard
- RSS-102, radiation safety per Safety Code 6 (compliance shown by computation)
- IC ID: 11881A-ST9100; 11881A-UNNB30; 8595A-TOBYL280 OR 8595A-1EHM44NN

#### Anatel Homologation

#### FCC

- FCC certification is pending
- CFR 47 Part 25, CFR 47 Part 15
- CONTAINS FCC ID: XGS-ST9100; XGS-UNNB30; XPYTOBYL280 OR XPY1EHM44NN

#### CE RED 2014/53/EU

#### Ingress Protection

- Cellular antenna: IP65
- Satellite antenna: IP67
- Transceiver unit: IP67

#### RoHS

- Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) <sup>1</sup>

#### UN

- UN 38.3 Transportation Compliance

#### PTCRB

#### AMAC

- Certification is pending

---

<sup>1</sup>European Union's (EU) Directive 2002/95/EEC "Restriction of Hazardous Substances" (RoHS) in Electronic and Electrical Equipment.



## EU Declaration of Conformity

Hereby, ORBCOMM Inc. declares that the radio equipment types listed in this document comply with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available from <http://www2.orbcomm.com/eudoc>.

### WARNING:

- The minimum 20 cm (8 in.) separation distance from the device is required for RF exposure safety for all persons.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference.(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
  - L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :
    - 1) L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
    - 2) L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.



## APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT CABLE

The development cable is p/n ST101084-001.

Figure 23: Development Cable

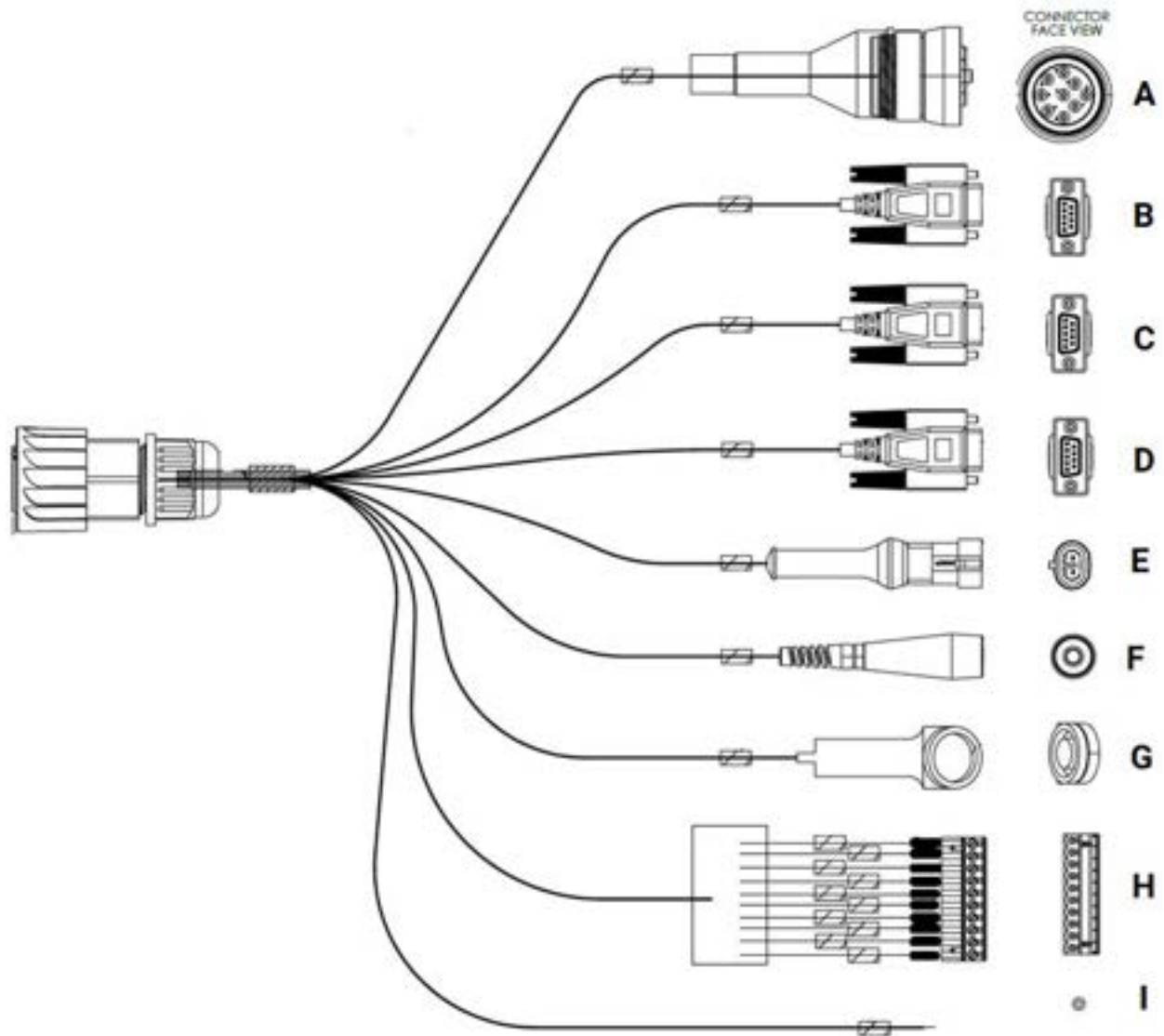
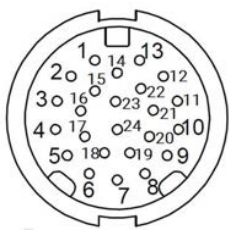

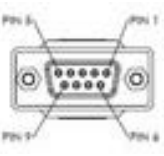
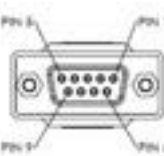
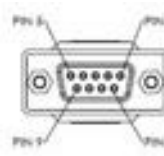
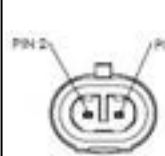


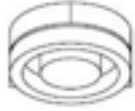




Table 7: Development Cable Connectors

Transceiver Connector	End A	End B	End C	End D	End E
					
PIN 9 - 1Wire Com					
PIN 10 - RS232 TX		PIN 2			
PIN 21 - RS232 RX		PIN 3			
PIN 22 - AUX RS232 TX			PIN 2		
PIN 13 - CAN 1 Low	PIN D				
PIN 14 - CAN 0 Low	PIN J				
PIN 1 - RS485 A				PIN 1	
PIN 24 - Dig IN 2					
PIN 16 - Dig IN 1					
PIN 4 - I/O_4					
PIN 5 - I/O_2					
PIN 6 _ Ground	PIN A and PIN E	PIN 5	PIN 5	PIN 5	PIN 2
PIN 7 - VEXT	PIN B				PIN 1
PIN 8 - Out 6					
PIN 18 - I/O_1					
PIN 17 - I/O_3					
PIN 3 - Dig IN 3					
PIN 15 - RS485 B				PIN 2	
PIN 23 - CAN 0 High	PIN H				
PIN 12 - CAN 1 High	PIN C				
PIN 11 - AUX RS232 RX			PIN 3		
PIN 20 - 1Wire Data					
PIN 19 - Out 5					
PIN 2 - Dig IN 4					

Transceiver Connector	End F	End G	End H	End I
				
PIN 9 - 1Wire Com		1Wire Common		
PIN 10 - RS232 TX				
PIN 21 - RS232 RX				
PIN 22 - AUX RS232 TX				
PIN 13 - CAN 1 Low				
PIN 14 - CAN 0 Low				
PIN 1 - RS485 A				
PIN 24 - Dig IN 2			PIN 8	
PIN 16 - Dig IN 1			PIN 7	
PIN 4 - I/O_4			PIN 4	
PIN 5 - I/O_2	Input 1			
PIN 6 - Ground	Ground		PIN 2	
PIN 7 - VEXT			PIN 1	
PIN 8 - Out 6			PIN 6	
PIN 18 - I/O_1				I/O_1
PIN 17 - I/O_3			PIN 3	
PIN 3 - Dig IN 3			PIN 9	
PIN 15 - RS485 B				
PIN 23 - CAN 0 High				
PIN 12 - CAN 1 High				
PIN 11 - AUX RS232 RX				
PIN 20 - 1Wire Data		1Wire Data		
PIN 19 - Out 5			PIN 5	
PIN 2 - Dig IN 4			PIN 10	



Project:  
**Northland Regional Council**  
May 31, 2021

---

# OPTIONS

---



**HSS**

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS



*GV-CORE-NANO  
Right, fast and  
simple decisions  
in critical  
situations*



Mounting optional GV-CORE-NANO-RM

## MINI CONTROL UNIT GV-CORE-NANO

The GV-CORE-NANO is a device integrating the standard interacting functions of a system and its operators with advanced warning, communications and process automation functions. It can be implemented as a simple activation panel saving costs and space significantly.

The GV-CORE-NANO is the ideal device for activate tones, pre-recorded messages and Public Address in real time. With the touch interface you can manage the entire siren network communication.

The functionality of the GV-CORE-NANO control unit is given by the applications it contains, which are supplied according to a client's needs and selection. These applications are designed to be mutually and directly interconnected into the complex whole. Depending on the applications combinations, it is possible to create a tailor-made solution to suit a specific client.

### FEATURES

- Touch screen control
- Friendly interface for user
- Activation of the desired tone by groups of sirens, individually or to the entire network
- Redundant and simultaneous communication controls: Radio, GSM, SAT, IP
- Checking the correct communication with the different sirens on different channels
- Access restricted by security codes
- Restriction of allowed functions according to entered code
- Possibility of integration with GV-EMS Emergency management system
- Desk top or rack mounting version

# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

# MONITORING MANAGEMENT CONTROL

MOBILE APP



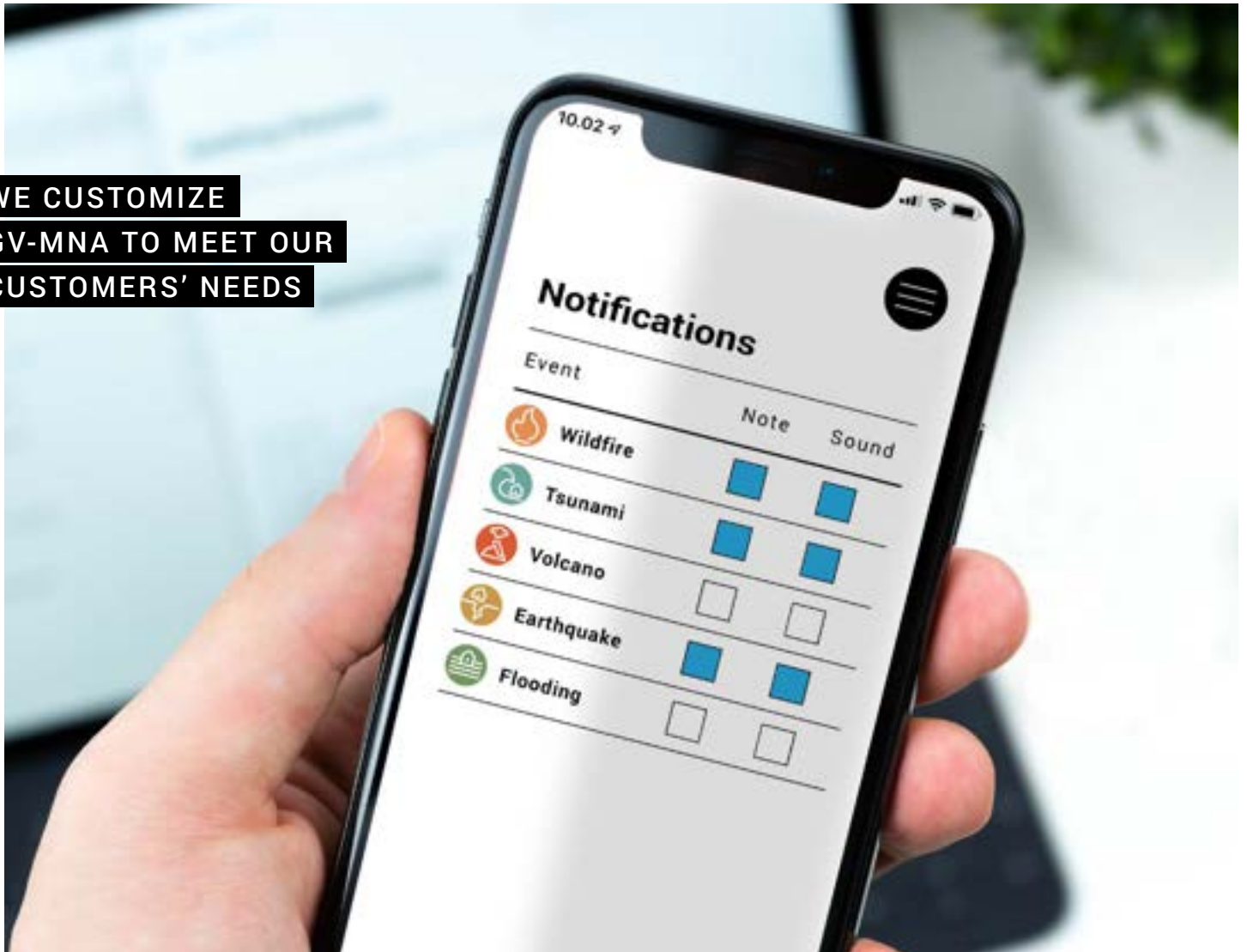
**HSS**



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

# ALLOWS YOU TO SEND URGENT INFORMATION TO YOUR EMPLOYEES OR CITIZENS

**WE CUSTOMIZE  
GV-MNA TO MEET OUR  
CUSTOMERS' NEEDS**



The mobile app Giant Voice® Mass Notification App, is an emergency alert system which allows you to send and receive information to your employees or citizens. The App has a user-friendly interface and has the ability to receive all kinds of alerts in a matter of seconds. We focus on alerting your staff or population regarding the emergency such as natural disasters, industrial disasters or a simple informative notification. The user can configure the type of notification depending on geographic area and type of emergency.

If alarms are activated because of a threat, your organization will be notified promptly via emergency alerts, that will inform you to evacuate towards a safer location.

Giant Voice® Mass Notification App provides a cost-effective solution with real-time messaging that can be used by any organization. The Giant Voice® Mass Notification App provides the ability to send and receive thousands of messages in seconds via SMS, Push Notification, and E-mail.





# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

ALERTS  
PEOPLE TO  
POSSIBLE  
DANGER



## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

Mini control unit

### Order No.

GV-CORE-NANO

### Option

### Product Description

Rack mounted mini control unit

### Order No.

GV-CORE-NANO-RM

REV. B

## APPLICATIONS

- Critical infrastructures (Dams, waterworks and civil protection facilities)
- Emergency services (fire-fighting, rescue units and police stations)
- Security services (banks, insurance companies and shopping centers)
- PA systems

## TECHNICAL DATA

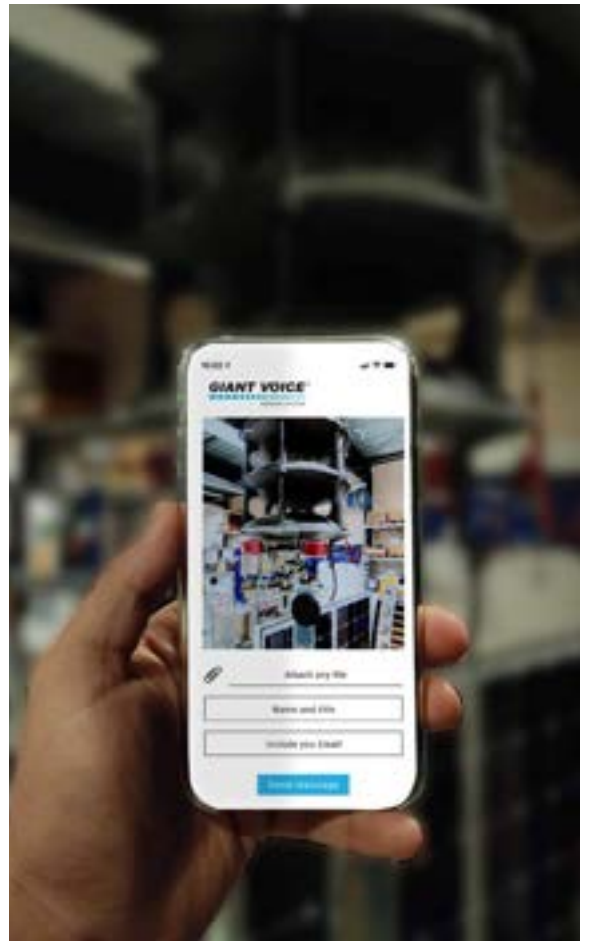
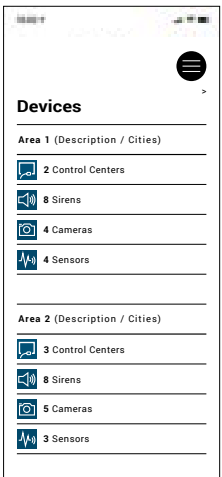
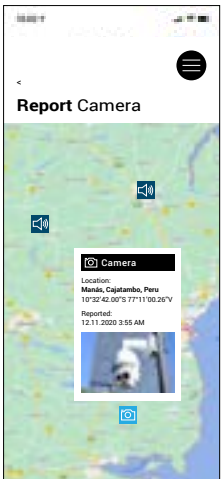
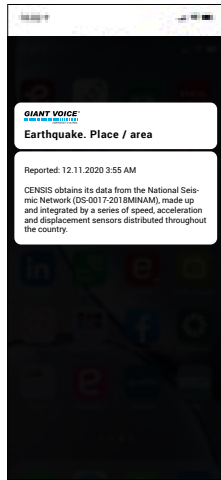
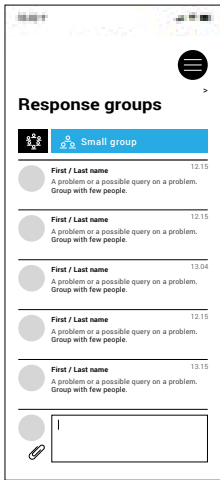
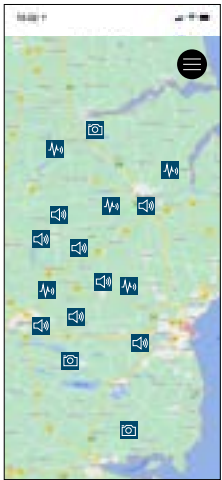
<b>Input voltage</b>	12V
<b>Available ports</b>	Audio 600 Ω balanced output, RS-232 serial, Ethernet and isolated contact inputs (optional)
<b>Communications</b>	Radio, GSM, SAT, IP
<b>Mounting</b>	Horizontal or vertical on the wall
<b>Material</b>	Aluminum front
<b>Operating temperature</b>	-25° C – +65° C
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 250 cm (98.43") Height: 180 cm (70.87") Depth: 80 cm (31.50")
<b>Weight</b>	Approx 1 kg

# HSS

ENGINEERING®  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

# PERSONALIZED NOTIFICATIONS

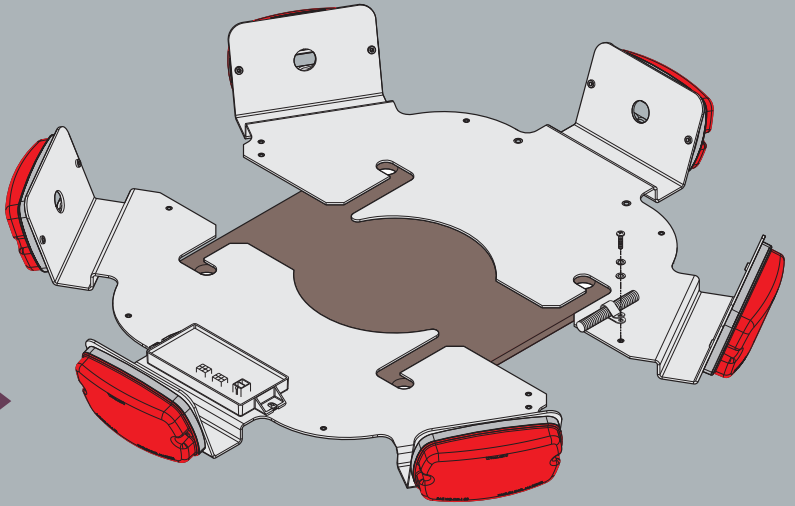


## FEATURES

- Compatible with GV-EMS platform
- Apple: The latest version and 35 MB free space
- Android: The latest version and 35 MB free space
- Specific emergency status
- Notification depending on location
- Device status
- Unlimited number of users
- Notification of situation awareness
- Device failure notification
- Convertible web subscription
- Geo-location of personal
- Send and receive information



Omni-directional  
six lighthouse  
Super-LED VisuAlert



# VISUAL LED WARNING TWS-VISUALERT

Enhance your Voice and Siren Mass Notification System with an optional visual component: The Omni-directional Visual Lighting for TWS-290 & OA Series.

## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

TWS-Valert LED Light Cluster  
Accessory for TWS Series.

### Order No.

TWS-VALERT\*

### Options

### Product Description

LED Controller

### Order No.

LEDCTRL

\* Denotes color Code:  
A-Amber, B-Blue, C-Clear (white), R-Red.  
REV. F

## FEATURES

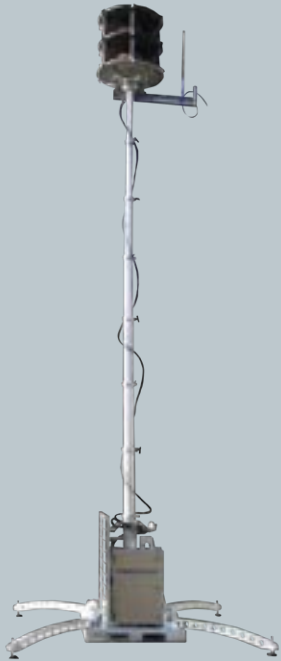
- VisuAlert Super-LED® mounts under a TWS-290 or Omni-Alert system
- Complete 360° highly effective LED warning
- VisuAlert illuminates with a designed flash pattern when siren is activated
- Cluster of six LED Whelen M6 Series warning lighthoods, 24 VDC
- All connections are waterproof
- All wiring is encased in protective sheathing, anchored to brackets to protect from damage
- Available in Red, Blue, White (Clear) or Amber
- Light source control module fully encapsulated and weatherproof
- Light source control module provides flash pattern selection and light synchronization
- Light source module covered by Whelen's two year warranty
- Bracket supports are 300 Series aluminium alloy in a high strength
- VisuAlert can be adapted to older ESC2020-controlled sirens
- 1.2 amps per light source @ 24 VDC.
- 2.5 amps total current draw when VisuAlert is operating
- Light source is greater than 6000 peak candela
- 84 flashes per minute
- M6 Series lighthouse dimensions: 109 mm H x 170 mm W x 35 mm D
- Weight: 12 kg
- IP rating: IP-66
- Operation temperature: -40° C to + 75° C

# HSS



**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS

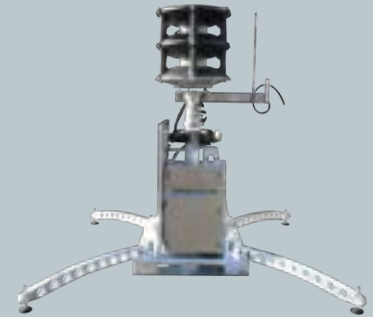
HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk



# GIANT VOICE®

EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

*The flexible  
alternative for  
temporary warning  
installation*



The Giant Voice® Deployable Unit is a flexible alternative for temporary warning system installation designed to meet your requirements even in harsh environments.

## DEPLOYABLE UNIT GV-DPU

Featuring the TWS-292 high power voice and siren system. This Deployable Unit provides a 360° superior coverage. The GV-DPU is easy to handle and the solid supporting legs make it possible to extend the 6-meter lockable pneumatic telescopic mast on rough ground. The deployable unit is equipped with 2 x 100 W solar panels as well as a universal AC charger for recharging the batteries. This is a flexible solution that allows you to charge your deployable unit whenever it is needed. The deployable unit is equipped with a 25 W radio (VHF or UHF) and can be activated remotely from any Giant Voice® Control Centre equipment.

The Giant Voice® Deployable Unit meets NATO standard requirements and can easily be moved to any site with a forklift or similar machine for fast and reliable warnings. The chassis has been designed to reduce freight volume plus transportation costs and to improve handling and easy installation.

### FEATURES

- TWS-292 - two omni-directional speaker cells
- 6-meter lockable pneumatic telescopic mast
- Two compartment aluminum cabinet
- 25 Watts 2-way radio incl. omni-directional 0dB gain antenna
- Local push button panel
- Solar Panel charging
- 115/230 VAC charging possibility
- UFC 4-021-01 compliant
- CAP (Common Alerting Protocol) compliant
- IPAWS compliant

# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



# GIANT VOICE®

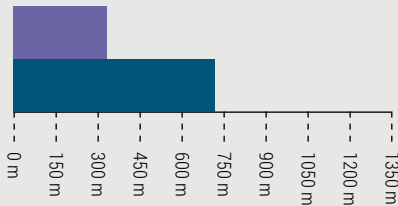
EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

## ACOUSTIC PERFORMANCE

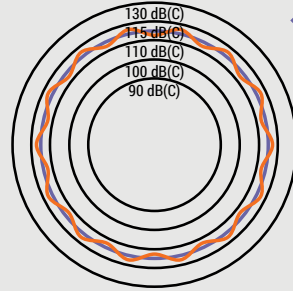
**SPL @ 30 m:** 115dB(C)

**Estimated 80dB range:** 366 m

**Estimated 70dB range:** 731 m



Note: 30 m performance levels listed represent repeatable results within +/-2 dB to stated levels. Estimated 80 dB perimeter is based on the Federal Emergency Management Agency's (FEMA) -10 dB per distance doubled path model.



The superior design of the speaker cluster provides a true 360° high sound output throughout the entire frequency range.

## ENVIRONMENTAL

**Operating Temperature** -35° C to +60° C

**Storage Temperature** -65° C to +125° C

**Humidity, Non-Condensing** 0 to 95%

## TECHNICAL DATA

<b>Output</b>	115 dB(C) @ 30 meters/100'
<b>Endurance</b>	Minimum 30 minutes of full power output with our recommended batteries
<b>Standard Tones</b>	Wail, Whoop, Attack, Hi-Lo, Alert, Airhorn plus Public Address
<b>System Test/Supervision</b>	SI-Test®, Low Battery Alarm and more
<b>Siren output (tones)</b>	800 Watts
<b>Siren output (voice)</b>	1000 Watts
<b>Standby current</b>	40 mAmp
<b>Power input</b>	2 x 100 Watts solar panels or 110/220 VAC
<b>Batteries</b>	2 x 12 V 70 AH batteries (included)
<b>Dimensions</b>	Height: 252 cm    Height erected: 660 cm Length: 113 cm Width: 113 cm Weight: 500 kg
<b>Operating temperature</b>	-35°C to 60°C (-31°F to 140°F)
<b>Storage temperature</b>	-65°C to 125°C (-85°F to 267°F)
<b>Humidity, non-condensing</b>	0 to 95%
<b>Wind speed</b>	Up to 27 m/s (without guide wires)

## ORDERING INFORMATION

### Product Description

Giant Voice Deployable Unit V5

### Order No.

GV-DPU

### Options

### Product Description

Communication via UHF/VHF  
For more information contact us.

REV. F

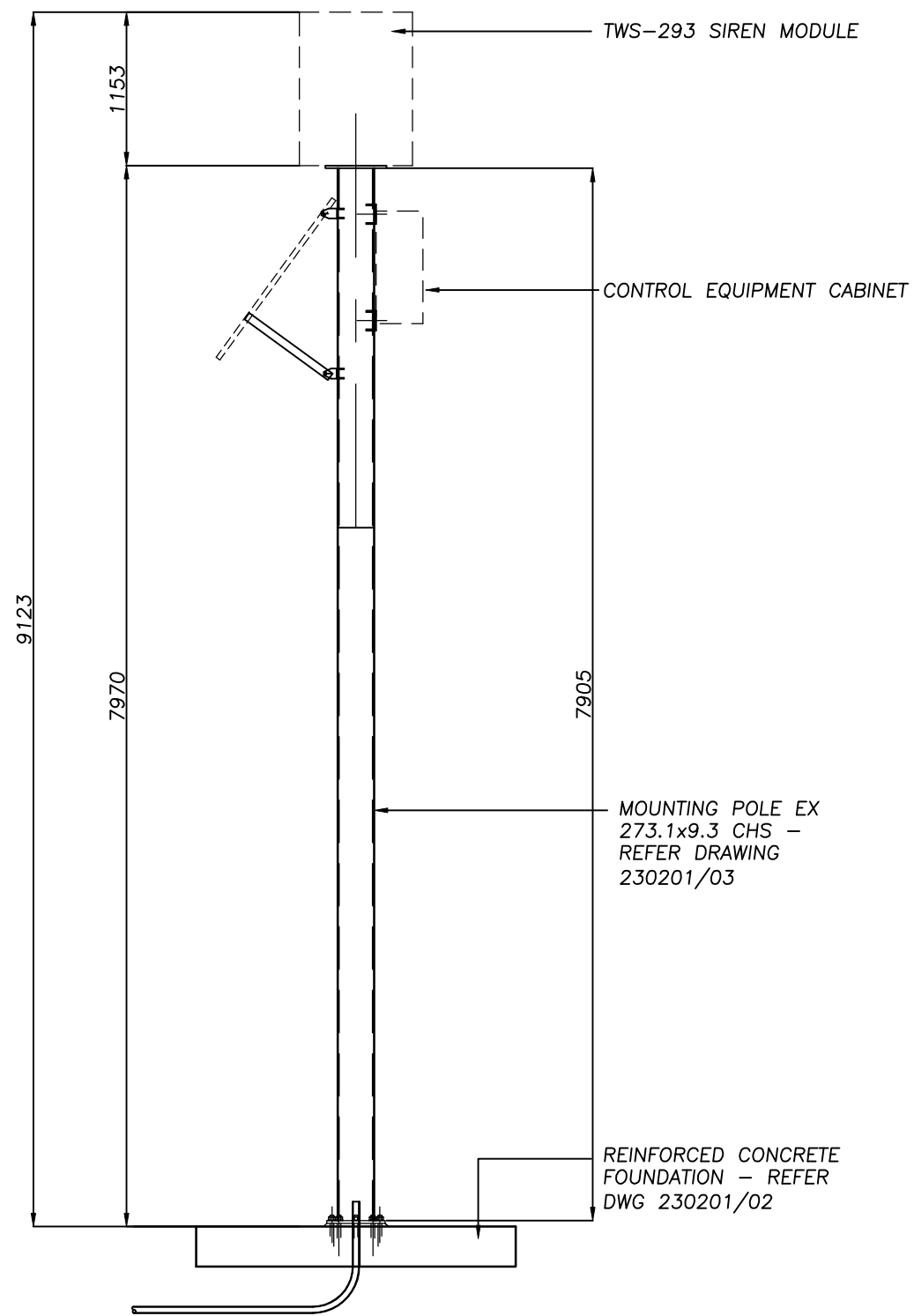
## OPTIONS

- **VISU-ALERT:** Cluster of 6 LED lighthoods for a complete 360° highly effective warning
- **TWS-TL31R:** Top mounted LED strobe light
- **GV-FLOODLIGHT:** Upgrade your deployable unit with a cluster of LED floodlights for a combined mobile warning and light tower
- **GV-GSM-RTU:** For GSM activation

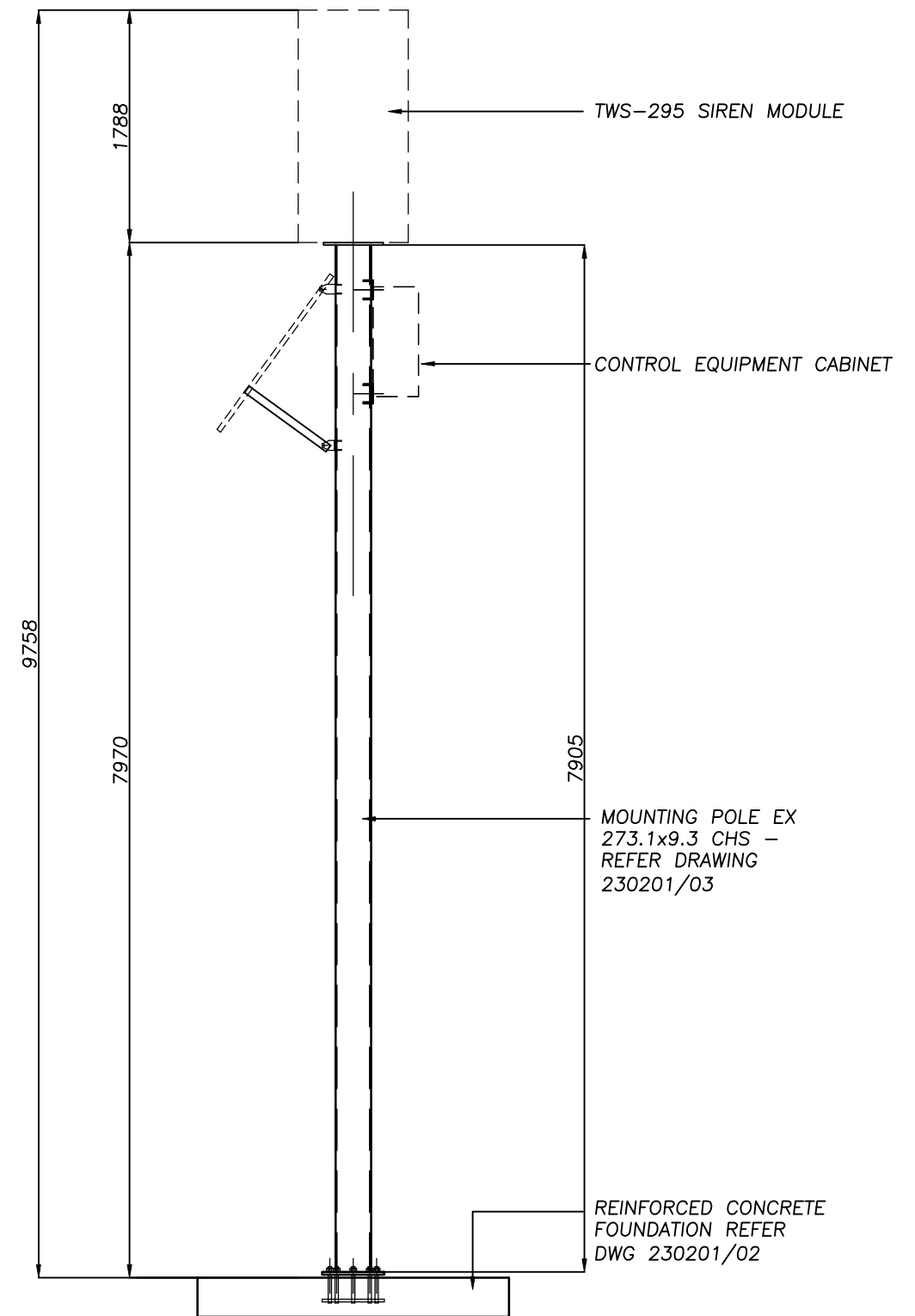
# HSS

HSS Engineering A/S  
Laegaardsvej 12 · 8520 Lystrup · Denmark  
Phone + 45 7022 8844  
www.hss.dk · info@hss.dk

**ENGINEERING®**  
WARNING SYSTEM SOLUTIONS



GENERAL ARRANGEMENT - TWS-293 SIREN  
1:50



GENERAL ARRANGEMENT - TWS-295 SIREN  
1:50

23 February 2023

Barker and Associates  
Kerikeri CBD  
Far North  
Northland 0230

**Attention: Makarena Dalton**

Dear Makarena

### **Tsunami Warning Sirens - Compliance**

Barker and Associates has engaged Marshall Day Acoustics to provide advice regarding tsunami warning sirens. The main request is to evaluate the proposed loudspeaker noise level emissions to enable comparison with the relevant District Plan noise limits across Northland.

**We do not consider that District Plan noise rules should typically apply to tsunami warning sirens. We consider that tsunami warning siren noise is effectively a **positive noise effect** on people. Requiring a tsunami siren to meet a typical daytime or night-time noise residential “noise limit” would not allow the tsunami warning system to work as intended and would not be in the interest of wider society.**

**Tsunami warning sirens are intended to be a loud source of sound. A natural consequence of this is that there could be (and should be) a *technical breach* of a District Plan noise rule (if there is no specific exclusion for emergency sirens within the District Plan rule).**

**We do not consider that there will be any adverse noise effects arising from occasional testing or emergency use of the tsunami warning system where these technically breach any District Plan noise rules.**

Notwithstanding the above, this letter provides initial information on noise emissions that can be used to establish locations in which a technical exceedance of the zone noise limits may occur. The letter is not intended to provide a very high level of detail on noise emissions from each individual loudspeaker tower<sup>1</sup>. We have made a range of assumptions based on previous measurements to establish our design advice. As a result, our conclusions are generalised.

### **District plan noise rules: each district has quite different noise limits**

We understand that the tsunami sirens are intended to be deployed in the:

- Kaipara District
- Far North District
- Whangarei District

The noise rules in each of these Districts differ even for similar types of zones. For instance, the *Rural Production* daytime noise rule in the Far North District is **65 dB L<sub>A10</sub>** at the site boundary, whereas in Kaipara District the noise limit in the *Rural* zone is **50 dB L<sub>Aeq</sub>** at the notional boundary.

The use of different noise standard descriptors (e.g. L<sub>A10</sub> vs L<sub>Aeq</sub>), the different numerical noise limits (e.g. 65 dB in the Far North vs 50 dB in Kaipara) and the different assessment position at which the noise limits apply

---

<sup>1</sup> Noise modelling of the individual loudspeaker towers has not been carried out for this assessment

(e.g. the site boundary in Far North and the notional boundary in Kaipara) means that it quickly becomes complex to determine where a technical breach of the noise limit will occur in each District.

Because of this we have prepared a “matrix of distances” that the planning assessment can use to estimate the properties where the relevant District Plan noise limits will be exceeded. These are tabulated and appended to this letter.

### Exclusions within the District Plan

Ideally the operation and testing of tsunami warning sirens would be excluded from assessment against the District Plan zone noise limits, as these rules are inappropriate for tsunami sirens.

We note that the Whangarei District Plan make the following statement regarding warning sirens: *“The noise rules shall not apply to the following activities:...The operation of emergency service vehicles or emergency callout sirens.”* “Emergency callout sirens” is not defined in the District Plan<sup>2</sup> but the words appear to relate directly to the use of a tsunami siren<sup>3</sup> In our view, this clause means that no noise limits apply to tsunami warning siren noise in any zones within Whangarei.

We are not aware of any specific exclusions in Kaipara or Far North District Plans but will review any clauses if provided to us. We recommend tsunami warning noise is excluded from compliance in any future district Plan revisions. We recommend Northland Regional Council submit on this matter or seek a plan change if required.

### We have calculated the distances at which noise levels (in 5 dBA bands) will be complied with

Appendix A to Appendix C gives the approximate distances at which tsunami siren noise will be below specific noise levels. These have been given in 5 dBA tiers for the following scenarios:

**Scenario A:** Daytime testing

**Scenario B:** Daytime emergency operation

**Scenario C:** Night-time emergency operation

Noise levels for  $L_{Aeq}$  (Whangarei and Kaipara) and  $L_{A10}$  (Far North) are given separately so that the noise levels in each district can be separately evaluated.

The following assumptions have been used in our noise modelling.

- 145 dB  $L_{WA}$  based sound power level and omnidirectional source (refer Appendix D for technical details).
- 80% relative humidity. Noise levels in dry air conditions may be slightly lower.
- 80% soft ground at source, middle and receiver distances. Noise levels over hard ground (e.g. water) may be higher.
- Propagation calculated using International Standard ISO 9613-2:1996 *Acoustics - Attenuation of sound during propagation outdoors – Part 2: General method of calculation*. This standard calculated noise in conditions favourable to sound propagation such as downwind or temperature inversion conditions. Noise levels in upwind or temperature lapse conditions will be appreciably lower (refer Appendix E for technical details).
- No acoustic screening will occur. Noise levels behind ridgelines (where there is no line-of-sight to the tsunami siren) or behind buildings will be appreciably lower.

<sup>2</sup> The definitions section states that if a phrase is not defined it should take its common meaning from the concise Oxford English Dictionary.

<sup>3</sup> Tsunami sirens are “calling out” a message and an alarm during an emergency and thus clearly fit within the everyday definition of this clause.



- Only one siren contributes to the noise level at each receiver.

The appendices show that:

- during **daytime testing** of sirens, the District Plan noise limits may be exceeded at up to 1,600 metres of the individual siren towers in some zones (e.g. rural, residential)
- during **daytime emergency operation**, the District Plan noise limits may be exceeded at up to 3,300 metres in some zones (e.g. residential, rural, coastal, etc.)
- during **night-time emergency operation**, the District Plan noise limits may be exceeded at up to 6,200 metres in some zones (e.g. residential, rural, coastal, etc.)

Refer to the appendices for more information on the distances at which specific noise levels will occur in each district.

We trust this information is useful. Please contact us if you have any questions.

Yours faithfully

**MARSHALL DAY ACOUSTICS LTD**



**Peter Ibbotson**

**Acoustic Engineer**

## APPENDIX A DAYTIME TESTING

Table 1: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Kaipara and Whangarei (L<sub>Aeq</sub> limits) DURING DAYTIME TESTING

Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating Sound Power Level of 136 dB L <sub>WA,eq</sub> (15 min)								
	75 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	70 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	65 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	60 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	55 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	50 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	45 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	40 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>
<b>DAY TESTING</b>	<b>250m</b>	<b>400m</b>	<b>600m</b>	<b>850m</b>	<b>1200m</b>	<b>1600m</b>	N/A	N/A
<i>Kaipara Zone Examples</i>	<b>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Industrial</b>			<b>If emitted from a Commercial zone: Commercial</b>	<b>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Residential, Rural, Māori Purpose zone</b>	<b>If emitted from Rural, Residential, Commercial, Māori Purpose: Rural, Residential, Māori Purpose</b>		
<i>Whangarei Zone Examples</i> <b>[NOTE THAT EMERGENCY SIRENS EXCLUDED IN THIS PLAN]</b>	<i>Heavy Industrial, Settlement Zone Industrial, SRIZ</i>		<i>Light Industry, Commercial, Sport and Active Recreation, Shopping Centre, Hospital, Airport</i>	<i>City Centre, Waterfront<sup>2</sup>, Mixed Use, Local Centre, Settlement Centre</i>	<b>If emitted from Port, Settlement, Heavy Industrial, light industrial, commercial, Sport and Active Recreation: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Natural Open Space, Open Space, Rural Production, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban.</b>	<b>If emitted from most other zones: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban</b>		
					<b>If emitted from most other zones: Open Space, Rural Production.</b>			

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones in each District are given
2. The District Plans include some errors. If there is question over what limit should apply, we have used our discretion (for instance there are conflicting limits for Rural Production zone in Whangarei)
3. In some Districts, the limit varies depending on the zone the noise source is located in.

Table 2: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Far North (L<sub>A10</sub> limits) DURING DAYTIME TESTING

	Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating sound power level of 133 dB L <sub>WA,10</sub> (15 min)							
	75 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	70 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	65 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	60 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	55 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	50 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	45 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	40 dB L <sub>A10</sub>
DAY TESTING	180m	300m	450m	700m	950m	1,400m	N/A	N/A
Far North Zone Examples			<p><b>If emitted from a Rural Production zone:</b> Rural Production, Residential, Coastal Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - other rural or coastal zone [notional boundary]</p> <p><b>If emitted from a Commercial zone:</b> Commercial [site]</p> <p><b>If emitted from an Industrial Zone:</b> Industrial [site]</p>		<p><b>If emitted from a Rural Living, Commercial, Industrial, Minerals or any Coastal zone:</b> - Coastal Residential, Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - any Rural or Coastal zone [notional boundary]</p>	<p><b>If emitted from a Residential zone:</b> - Residential [site boundary] - any Rural or Coastal zone [notional boundary]</p>		

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones are given.
2. In the FNDC, the limit varies depending on the zone the noise source is located in (for instance if a siren was located in a Rural Production zone, it would need to meet 65 dB L<sub>A10</sub> at another Rural Production zone during the day, but if a siren was located in a Rural Living zone the limit would be 55 dB L<sub>A10</sub> at a Rural Production zone during the day).

## APPENDIX B DAYTIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Table 3: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Kaipara and Whangarei (L<sub>Aeq</sub> limits) during DAYTIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating Sound Power Level of 145 dB L <sub>WA,eq</sub> (15 min)								
	75 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	70 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	65 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	60 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	55 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	50 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	45 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	40 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>
<b>DAY EMERGENCY</b>	<b>550m</b>	<b>800m</b>	<b>1,100m</b>	<b>1,500m</b>	<b>2,000m</b>	<b>2,600m</b>	N/A	N/A
<i>Kaipara Zone Examples</i>	<i>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Industrial</i>			<i>If emitted from a Commercial zone: Commercial</i>	<i>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Residential, Rural, Māori Purpose zone</i>	<i>If emitted from Rural, Residential, Commercial, Māori Purpose: Rural, Residential, Māori Purpose</i>		
<i>Whangarei Zone Examples [NOTE THAT EMERGENCY SIRENS EXCLUDED IN THIS PLAN]</i>	<i>Heavy Industrial, Settlement Zone Industrial, SRIZ</i>		<i>Light Industry, Commercial, Sport and Active Recreation, Shopping Centre, Hospital, Airport</i>	<i>City Centre, Waterfront<sup>2</sup>, Mixed Use, Local Centre, Settlement Centre</i>	<i>If emitted from Port, Settlement, Heavy Industrial, Light Industrial, Commercial, Sport and Active Recreation: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Natural Open Space, Open Space, Rural Production, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban.</i>	<i>If emitted from most other zones: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban</i>		
					<i>If emitted from most other zones: Open Space, Rural Production.</i>			

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones in each District are given
2. The District Plans include some errors. If there is question over what limit should apply, we have used our discretion (for instance there are conflicting limits for Rural Production zone in Whangarei)
3. In some Districts, the limit varies depending on the zone the noise source is located in.

Table 4: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Far North (L<sub>A10</sub> limits) DAYTIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating sound power level of 150 dB L <sub>WA,10</sub> (15 min)								
	75 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	70 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	65 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	60 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	55 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	50 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	45 dB L <sub>A10</sub>	40 dB L <sub>A10</sub>
<b>DAY EMERGENCY</b>	<b>800m</b>	<b>1,100m</b>	<b>1,500m</b>	<b>2,000m</b>	<b>2,600m</b>	<b>3,300m</b>	N/A	N/A
<i>Far North Zone Examples</i>			<p><b>If emitted from a Rural Production zone:</b> Rural Production, Residential, Coastal Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - other rural or coastal zone [notional boundary]</p> <p><b>If emitted from a Commercial zone:</b> Commercial [site]</p> <p><b>If emitted from an Industrial Zone:</b> Industrial [site]</p>		<p><b>If emitted from a Rural Living, Commercial, Industrial, Minerals or any Coastal zone:</b> - Coastal Residential, Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - any Rural or Coastal zone [notional boundary]</p>	<p><b>If emitted from a Residential zone:</b> - Residential [site boundary] - any Rural or Coastal zone [notional boundary]</p>		

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones are given.
2. In the FNDC, the limit varies depending on the zone the noise source is located in (for instance if a siren was located in a *Rural Production* zone, it would need to meet 65 dB L<sub>A10</sub> at another *Rural Production* zone during the day, but if a siren was located in a *Rural Living* zone the limit would be 55 dB L<sub>A10</sub> at a *Rural Production* zone during the day).

## APPENDIX C NIGHT-TIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Table 5: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Kaipara and Whangarei (L<sub>Aeq</sub> limits) during NIGHT-TIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating sound power level of 150 dB L <sub>WA,eq</sub> (15 min)								
	75 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	70 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	65 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	60 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	55 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	50 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	45 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	40 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>
<b>NIGHT EMERGENCY</b>	<b>800m</b>	<b>1,100m</b>	<b>1,500m</b>	<b>2,000m</b>	<b>2,600m</b>	<b>3,300m</b>	<b>4,200m</b>	<b>5,100m</b>
<i>Kaipara Zone Examples</i>	<i>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Industrial</i>			<i>If emitted from a Commercial zone: Commercial</i>			<i>If emitted from an Industrial zone: Residential, Rural, Māori Purpose zone</i>	<i>If emitted from Rural, Residential, Commercial, Māori Purpose: Rural, Residential, Māori Purpose</i>
<i>Whangarei Zone Examples [NOTE THAT EMERGENCY SIRENS EXCLUDED IN THIS PLAN]</i>	<i>Heavy Industrial, Settlement Zone Industrial, SRIZ</i>			<i>Light Industry, Commercial, Sport and Active Recreation, Shopping Centre, Hospital, Airport</i>	<i>City Centre, Waterfront<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Mixed Use, Local Centre, Settlement Centre</i>  <i>If emitted from most other zones: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban</i>	<i>If emitted from Port, Settlement, Heavy Industrial, Light Industrial, Commercial, Sport and Active Recreation: Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Natural Open Space, Open Space.</i>	<i>If emitted from most other zones: Open Space, Rural Production, Residential, Neighbourhood Centre, Rural Lifestyle, Settlement, Future Urban</i>

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones in each District are given
2. The District Plans include some errors. Where there is question over what limit should apply, we have used our discretion (for instance there are conflicting limits for Rural Production zone in Whangarei)
3. In these districts, the limit varies depending on the zone the noise source is located in.

Table 6: Distance at which rating noise levels are likely to be met in Far North (L<sub>A10</sub> limits) during NIGHT-TIME EMERGENCY OPERATION

Distance at which rating noise level is met (assessed in accordance with NZS6802:2008). Rating sound power level of 155 dB L <sub>WA,10</sub> (15 min)								
	75 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	70 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	65 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	60 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	55 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	50 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	45 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>	40 dB L <sub>Aeq</sub>
<b>NIGHT EMERGENCY</b>	<b>1,100m</b>	<b>1,500m</b>	<b>2,000m</b>	<b>2,600m</b>	<b>3,300m</b>	<b>4,200m</b>	<b>5,100m</b>	<b>6,200m</b>
<i>Far North Zone Examples</i>					<i>If emitted from a Commercial zone: Commercial [site]</i>		<i>If emitted from a Rural Production zone: Rural Production, Residential, Coastal Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - other rural or coastal zone [notional boundary]</i>	
					<i>If emitted from an Industrial Zone: Industrial [site]</i>		<i>If emitted from a Commercial, Industrial, Coastal or Residential zone: - Residential, Coastal Residential, Russell Township [site boundary] - other rural or coastal zone [notional boundary].</i>	

Notes:

1. Zone examples should be checked by the consultant planner for accuracy. Not all zones are given.

**APPENDIX D SIREN SYSTEM SELECTIONS:**

We do not expect the siren systems to deliver the sound pressure levels claimed (when considered as an  $L_{Aeq(t)}$  level). Two siren system models are proposed to be used. These are the HSS Engineering TWS-293 and TWS-295. The manufacturer datasheet provides the following acoustic data:

- TWS-293                    149 dBC @ 1m, 119 dBC @ 30m
- TWS-295                    153 dBC @ 1m, 123 dBC @30m

The District Plan limits use “A-weighting” whereas the stated HSS Engineering data sheets state sound pressure levels in terms of “C-weighting”. Our evaluation of other tsunami siren tests is that there is a negligible difference between the A- and C-weightings when measured in the field (less than 1 decibel of difference within 50 metres of the sirens). On this basis, we consider that any C-weighted specification can simply be read as an A-weighted level<sup>4</sup>.

The HSS Engineering sound pressure levels given are determined in accordance with ISO13475-1. This standard provides a test methodology for measurement of loudspeaker level. However the level stated by the manufacturer does not clarify whether the stated level is given in terms of  $L_{AFmax}$ ,  $L_{Aeq(t)}$  or perhaps some other value such as  $L_{Cpeak}$ . The relevant District Plan noise limits are given in  $L_{Aeq}$  (or  $L_{A10}$  in the case of Far North)<sup>5</sup> and it is necessary to evaluate noise using these parameters<sup>6</sup>.

We consider it likely that the level quoted by HSS refers to the  $L_{AFmax}$  (or possibly a  $L_{Zpeak}$ ) noise level measured using a test signal in standardised conditions – we do not expect that the siren systems could generate  $L_{Aeq}$  noise levels over the duration of the test signal at sound pressure levels of 119 to 123 dB at 30 metres. Such noise levels would be extremely high and would be very unpleasant (and potentially debilitating) to anyone within 50 metres of the sirens who was not wearing hearing protection.

Our experience with similarly designed siren systems operating in the field is that sound pressure levels will be in the order of 80 - 82 dB  $L_{Aeq(1 min)}$  at 150 metres and around 90 - 91 dB  $L_{Aeq(1 min)}$  at 75 metres during tests<sup>7</sup>. This can be conservatively modelled as a sound power level of 145 dB  $L_{WA,eq(1 min)}$ <sup>8</sup>. Based on our experience, we have calculated noise emissions, for this assessment, based on a simple omnidirectional loudspeaker with the following sound power level:

**Table 7: Octave Band Noise Level Results**

Source	Sound Power Level dB $L_{WA,eq(1 min)}$							dBA
	63	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	
HSS Loudspeakers (used both TWS-295 and TWS-293)	-	-	-	140	140	140	-	145

<sup>4</sup> The warning signal is broadly composed of a sweep of frequencies from around 500 to 2 kHz and as such there is little difference between A and C weighted levels.

<sup>5</sup> The  $L_{A10}$  and  $L_{Aeq}$  noise levels are numerically quite similar, whereas  $L_{AFmax}$  and  $L_{Zpeak}$  levels are numerically much higher.

<sup>6</sup> The District Plan night-time rules also have limits on  $L_{AFmax}$  noise levels. However in the case of a tsunami warning siren, the  $L_{A10}$  or  $L_{Aeq}$  night -time rules would control where a technical breach will occur.

<sup>7</sup>  $L_{AFmax}$  noise levels would be around 14 decibels higher than this and  $L_{Zpeak}$  levels would be around 21 decibels higher than this

<sup>8</sup> The sound power level is the amount of sound energy produced if you conceptualise the source as a very small point. As sound levels drop with respect to distance, you get the quoted sound pressure levels ( $L_{Aeq}$  or  $L_{A10}$ ) at different distances. In this case with respect to a 145 dB  $L_{WA}$ , it allows for a small safety factor as this sound power level would return a sound pressure level of around 88 dB  $L_{Aeq(1 min)}$  at 150 metres from the base of the loudspeaker support



## APPENDIX E CALCULATIONS IN ACCORDANCE WITH NZS6802

All District Plans reference New Zealand Standard NZS6802<sup>9</sup>. This standard sets out how environmental sound should be assessed in New Zealand for typical environmental sources.

The NZS6802 standard is not particularly well suited to the assessment of tsunami siren noise. However the District Plan requires the use of this standard and thus we have used it based on the following assumptions:

### Testing

- The swept-sine nature of the siren would be subjectively tonal (but not objectively tonal) and a special audible characteristics correction of + 5dBA should therefore apply to all testing and operation.
- The NZS6802:2008 assessment period is 15 minutes. **Testing** of the tsunami sirens during the daytime has previously involved two cycles of around one minute of tsunami alarm signal (two minutes of signal in total). This correlates to a rating sound power level of 136 dB  $L_{WA,eq(15\ min)}$  and 133 dB  $L_{WA,10(15\ min)}$ <sup>10</sup>
- A duration correction for a 15-hour day period can be used. A duration correction of -5 decibels would be appropriate during the day in all districts.
- Testing would occur twice per year during the statutory daytime. Testing of sirens would not occur at night.

### Operation (Emergency Evacuation)

- During emergency operation (i.e. in an emergency tsunami evacuation) it is assumed that the siren could operate for at least a full 15-minute assessment period but for less than 5 hours of the day period. A full duration correction is considered appropriate during the daytime. This correlates to a rating sound power level of 145 dB  $L_{WA,eq(15\ min)}$  and 150 dB  $L_{WA,10(15\ min)}$ <sup>11</sup>.
- No duration correction can be applied at night. This correlates to a rating sound power level of 150 dB  $L_{WA,eq(15\ min)}$  and 155 dB  $L_{WA,10(15\ min)}$ <sup>12</sup>.

<sup>9</sup> The Far North District Plan still references the 1991 version of the standard, even though this was superseded in 2008. The Kaipara and Whangarei District Plan versions reference the current 2008 version of the standard. An important difference between the standard is the way that special audible characteristics are applied. The 1991 version reduces the limit by 5 dBA, whereas the 2008 version adds a 5 decibel penalty to the assessed noise level. Both approaches are effectively the same, but use a different methodology. To avoid confusion in this assessment we have used the 2008 approach and added any special audible characteristics correction to the assessed noise level.

<sup>10</sup> This is the sound power level over a fifteen-minute period when the periods of noise (2 minutes) and quiet (13 minutes) are included. The  $L_{A10}$  value is less than the  $L_{Aeq}$  level as the signal is only present for two minutes of the fifteen-minute test period during the daytime – this has been determined from previous measurements carried out of tsunami siren operation elsewhere in NZ. The rating sound power level includes the SAC and duration correction for the day period.

<sup>11</sup> This is the sound power level assuming the siren operates continuously (warning alarm with speech between) for less than five hours during an evacuation. The  $L_{A10}$  value is higher than the  $L_{Aeq}$  value as the periods of louder noise (alarm) are present for longer during the assessment period. The rating sound power level includes the SAC and duration correction for the day period.

<sup>12</sup> This is the sound power level assuming the siren operates continuously (warning alarm with speech between) over any 15-minute period at night. It is the same as the daytime sound power level, but without any -5 decibel duration correction.

# Appendix 5 - Rules Checklist

Proposal: Northland Tsunami Rollout

Address: Ramp Road, Lake Ohia

District Plan: Far North District Plan

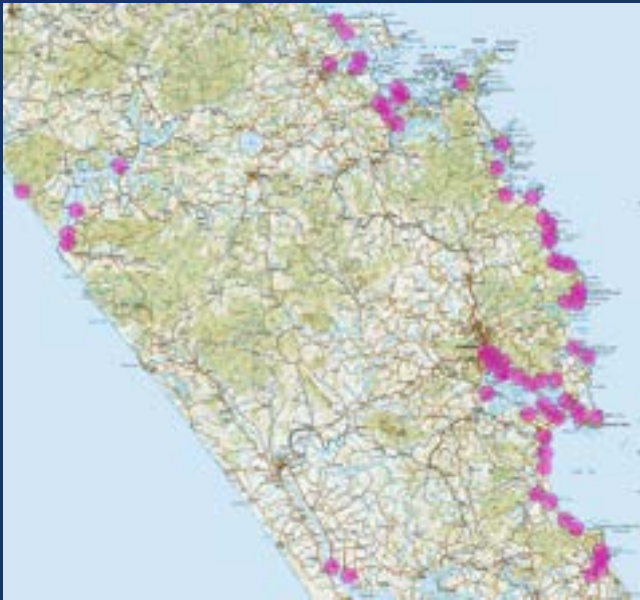
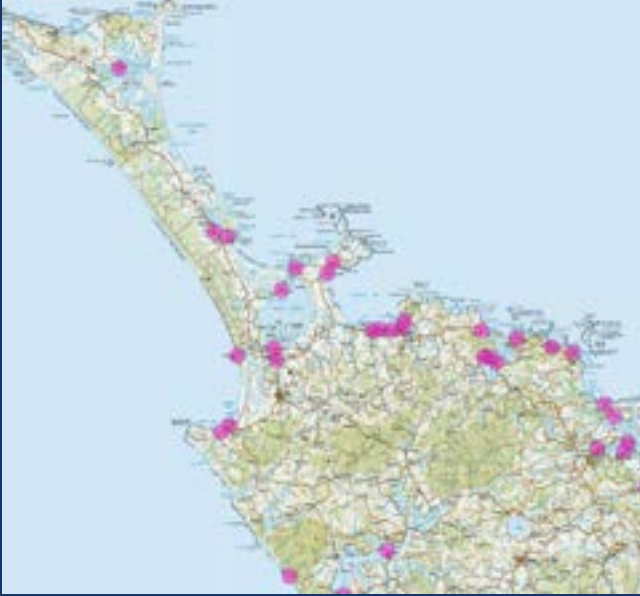
Siren 80		Part Section 26 Blk V Rangaunu SD, Far North District	
Operative Zone	Conservation Zone		
Proposed Zone	Natural Open Space Zone		
Operative Overlays/Controls	None		
Proposed Overlays/Controls	Coastal Environment		
Designations	None		
Rule	Compliance	Non-Compliance	
Recreational Activities Zone			
9.7.5.1.1 PURPOSE OF BUILDINGS		<b>Does not Comply</b> Proposal is not for a building that is related conservation activities. <b>Non-Complying</b>	
9.7.5.1.2 SCALE OF ACTIVITIES	N/A - Not Relevant to the proposal.		
9.7.5.1.3 BUILDING HEIGHT		<b>Does not Comply</b> Siren 80 exceeds the 8m permitted standard as Siren 80 is 9.8m high. <b>Restricted Discretionary</b>	
9.7.5.1.4 SUNLIGHT	<b>Complies</b> No part of the proposed Siren will project beyond a 45 degree recession plane from any point 2m above ground level at any site boundary. <b>Permitted</b>		
9.7.5.1.5 STORMWATER MANAGEMENT	<b>Complies</b> Proposal impermeable surfaces will not exceed 10% of the gross site area or 1,000m <sup>2</sup> . <b>Permitted</b>		

Rule	Compliance	Non-Compliance
9.7.5.1.6 SCREENING FOR NEIGHBOURS	N/A - Not Relevant to the proposal.	
9.7.5.1.7 KEEPING OF ANIMALS	N/A - Not Relevant to the proposal.	
9.7.5.1.8 NOISE		<b>Does not comply</b> Siren 80 will exceed the permitted noise thresholds. <b>Restricted Discretionary</b>
9.7.5.1.9 HELICOPTER MOVEMENTS	N/A - Not Relevant to the proposal.	
9.7.5.1.10 SETBACK FROM BOUNDARIES	N/A – Proposal is not for a building for residential purposes	
9.7.5.1.11 BUILDING COVERAGE	<b>Complies</b> Siren 80 has a base measurement of 6.25 m <sup>2</sup> so is under the maximum total Building Coverage of a site of 8% or 800m <sup>2</sup> . <b>Permitted</b>	
<b>Natural and Physical Resources</b>		
12.1.6.1 PERMITTED ACTIVITIES		<b>Does not Comply</b> (a) Proposal complies with the permitted activities set out in Rules 12.1.6.1.1 to 12.1.6.1.6 (see below). (b) Proposal <u>does not</u> comply with the relevant standards for permitted, controlled, restricted discretionary, or discretionary activities in the Conservation Zone (see above). (c) Proposal complies with the other relevant standards for permitted activities set out in Part 3 of the ODP (see below). <b>Non-Complying</b>
12.1.6.1.1 PROTECTION OF OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPE FEATURES	N/A – Proposal is not on an outstanding landscape feature.	
12.1.6.1.2 INDIGENOUS VEGETATION CLEARANCE IN OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPES	N/A - Proposal does not include indigenous vegetation clearance.	


Rule	Compliance	Non-Compliance
12.1.6.1.3 TREE PLANTING IN OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPES	<b>N/A</b> – Proposal does not include tree planting	
12.1.6.1.4 EXCAVATION AND/OR FILLING WITHIN AN OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPE	<p>Complies</p> <p>(a) 3.5m<sup>3</sup> of earthworks are proposed therefore proposed earthworks do not exceed 300m<sup>3</sup> in any 12 month period per site.</p> <p>(b) The cut and fill height does not exceed the maximum permitted cut and/or fill height of 3m.</p> <p>(c) Cut area will be visible from a public reserve, coastal marine area or the foreshore shall but all exposed ground will be constructed over or regrassed as required.</p> <p><b>Permitted</b></p>	
12.1.6.1.5 BUILDINGS WITHIN OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPES	<p><b>Complies</b></p> <p>(a) N/A Proposal is not in the General Coastal Zone.</p> <p>(b) The Siren is proposed to be painted in Resene’s ‘Resene Abbey cc’ coded as B45-009-231, this colour has a Light Reflectance Value of approximately 15 which is less than the permitted reflectance value of 30%</p> <p>(c) N/A- Proposal is not for an alteration/addition to an existing building.</p> <p>(d) N/A – Proposal is not for a residential unit.</p> <p>(e) Proposed Siren has a gross floor area of less than 25m<sup>2</sup>.</p> <p><b>Permitted</b></p>	
12.1.6.1.6 UTILITY SERVICES IN OUTSTANDING LANDSCAPES	<b>N/A</b> – Proposal is not for a Utility Service as defined in the ODP.	

Rule	Compliance	Non-Compliance
12.2 INDIGENOUS FLORA AND FAUNA	<b>N/A</b> –proposal does not affect indigenous Flora and Fauna.	
12.3.6.1.2 EXCAVATION AND/OR FILLING, INCLUDING OBTAINING ROADING MATERIAL BUT EXCLUDING MINING AND QUARRYING, IN THE CONSERVATION ZONE.	<b>Complies</b> 3.5m <sup>3</sup> of earthworks are proposed over an area of 6.25m <sup>2</sup> therefore proposed earthworks do not exceed 300m <sup>3</sup> nor the maximum permitted cut and fill height of 3m. <b>Permitted</b>	
12.4 NATURAL HAZARDS	<b>N/A</b> – Natural Hazards not identified on proposed site.	
12.5 HERITAGE	<b>N/A</b> – Heritage sites not identified on proposed site.	
12.7.6.1.1 SETBACK FROM LAKES, RIVERS AND THE COASTAL MARINE AREA	<b>Complies</b> Proposed Siren is more than 30m from the CMA <b>Permitted.</b>	
12.8 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES	<b>N/A</b> – Rules in this chapter are not relevant to the proposal.	
12.9 RENEWABLE ENERGY AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY	<b>N/A</b> – Rules in this chapter are not relevant to the proposal.	
<b>Proposed FNDC plan – rules that have immediate legal effect.</b>		
<b>EW-R12</b> Earthworks and the Discovery of Suspected Sensitive Material	Yes	
<b>EW-R13</b> Earthworks and Erosion and Sediment Control	Yes	
<b>EW-S3</b> Accidental Discovery Protocol	Yes	
<b>EW-S5</b> Erosion and Sediment Control	Yes	

# New Siren Coverage Maps



## Legend

 Approximate siren sound coverage



**NORTHLAND  
EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT**

**GROUP**

**GET READY**

[.govt.nz](http://.govt.nz)



[www.civildefence.govt.nz](http://www.civildefence.govt.nz)



[www.nrc.govt.nz](http://www.nrc.govt.nz)  
0800 002 004



[www.wdc.govt.nz](http://www.wdc.govt.nz)  
0800 002 004



Kaipara te Oranganui  
**KAIPARA  
DISTRICT**  
Two Oceans Two Harbours

[www.kaipara.govt.nz](http://www.kaipara.govt.nz)  
0800 727 059



[www.fndc.govt.nz](http://www.fndc.govt.nz)  
0800 920 029



# Northland Tsunami Siren Project



## WHAT YOU NEED TO KNOW

Northland's tsunami sirens are being replaced  
**FIND OUT MORE INSIDE**

## Tsunami sirens in Northland

The current Northland tsunami siren network is made up of over 200 sirens located along Northland's coastline.

This network is an initial warning system to alert coastal communities of distant source Tsunami threats.

The sirens are owned by the local District Councils and managed by the Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group on behalf of all Northlanders.

The current system is coming to the end of its expected life and is set to be replaced with up-to-date technology.

Some areas across Northland that cannot hear the outdoor sirens also have indoor sirens. These are activated simultaneously with the outdoor sirens.

## What to do when you hear a tsunami siren?

Always remember, tsunami sirens are just one part of a range of formal and informal warning systems, any of which can alert people to a tsunami.

When there is a tsunami warning the siren will sound intermittently. This is a strong signal to

**SEEK FURTHER INFORMATION.**

## Evacuation maps

Find out if you live, work, or play in a tsunami zone so you can plan your evacuation route ahead of time.

Go to [www.nrc.govt.nz/tsunami](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/tsunami) to view our interactive maps.



Current Northland tsunami sirens

## Tsunami siren replacement project

To help better protect Northlanders against the threat of Tsunami and meet the new siren guidelines, a joint project was initiated by all four Northland councils, to replace the existing sirens with new models that are standard compliant. The project is set to replace the current sirens with 96 new sirens – starting in 2023 and rolling out over the next couple of years.

The new sirens are quite different from the existing ones. They have much greater sound coverage, can provide voice messaging as well as multi-tone siren sounds, have back-up solar power, and are activated separately from the mains power via the cell phone network or satellite.

As they are independent of the power grid, they will also be on their own poles, and because they have greater sound coverage, we'll require fewer sirens in fewer, more effective locations.

The Northland Civil Defence Emergency Management Group has been working with the siren suppliers – HSS Engineering – to identify the best locations for the new sirens that will provide the best coverage across the region.

However, the project remains about updating what we have, while improving the coverage of existing areas, not adding additional areas.

The current indoor sirens will also continue to be activated simultaneously with the outdoor sirens for the foreseeable future.

For more information on the project head to: [www.nrc.govt.nz/tsunami](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/tsunami)



Example of new tsunami siren

## Seeking further information

Whether it's the current sirens or the new sirens, when you hear one, the first thing to do is to seek further information. Here are some of the key places to check:

- Emergency Mobile Alert or Red Cross Hazard App notification. Find out more at: [www.nrc.govt.nz/cdalert](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/cdalert)
- Northland Civil Defence Facebook page ([civildefencenorthland](https://www.facebook.com/civildefencenorthland))
- Northland council websites, such as [www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/civildefence)
- TV and Radio
- Other social media sites

Follow the instructions given by Civil Defence and spread the word to people you think may be at risk.

Remember, tsunami sirens don't necessarily mean you need to evacuate the area right away. They do mean you need to find out what the level of threat is.

Make sure you stay up-to-date and check multiple sources during the alert if you can. No single source of information works for everyone, so make sure you share any official alerts with others – especially those you know are isolated.

## Natural warnings

For a local source tsunami, which could arrive in minutes, there won't be time for an official warning. It is important to recognise the natural warning signs and act quickly.

If you experience:

Out of the ordinary sea behaviour, such as sudden sea level rise or fall and/or an unusual noise.

A strong earthquake that is hard to stand up or lasts longer than a minute.

Don't wait for official warning, evacuate, and wait in a safe place for the official all clear – a wave could arrive within minutes.